



CzechClass101.com

LEVEL
3



Czech

Beginner



Unabridged Edition

innovative LANGUAGE.COM

innovative LANGUAGE.COM

LESSON NOTES

Beginner S1 #1

Talking About Your Skills in Czech

CONTENTS

- 2 Czech
- 2 English
- 2 Vocabulary
- 3 Sample Sentences
- 4 Vocabulary Phrase Usage
- 5 Grammar
- 9 Cultural Insight

1

CZECH

1. Helena: Matěji, máš kolečkový brusle?
2. Matěj: Jo, jezdím asi dva roky.
3. Helena: A jezdíš už dobře?
4. Matěj: Jde to. Ještě neumím moc dobře brzdit.
5. Helena: Aha. To je dobrý. Já neumím jezdit vůbec.
6. Matěj: Můžu tě to naučit, jestli chceš?
7. Helena: Jo, to bych ráda. Můžem jezdit spolu.

ENGLISH

1. Helena: Matěj, you have roller-skates?
2. Matěj: Yeah, I've been roller-skating for about two years.
3. Helena: And can you do it well?
4. Matěj: Could be better. I can't brake very well yet.
5. Helena: I see. That's all right. I can't roller-skate at all.
6. Matěj: I can teach you, if you want?
7. Helena: Yeah, I'd love to. We can roller-skate together.

VOCABULARY

Czech	English	Class
mít	to have	modal verb
kolečkové brusle	roller-skates	noun
jezdit	to go by something, to ride, to cycle	verb
dobře	well	adjective
umět	to know (how to do something)	verb
ještě	yet	adverb
moc	can	verb
brzdit	to brake	verb
spolu	together	adverb

SAMPLE SENTENCES

<p>Máme ještě stůl pro dva. "We still have a table for two."</p>	<p>Ano, máme stůl pro dvě osoby. "Yes, we do have a table for two people."</p>
<p>Mají v zahradě spoustu odpadků. "They have too much garbage in their garden."</p>	<p>Mám dva bratry a sestru. "I have two brothers and one sister."</p>
<p>Chci si koupit kolečkové brusle. "I want to buy roller-skates."</p>	<p>Tady se nemůže jezdit na kole. "Cycling is not allowed here."</p>
<p>Mějte se tu dobře. "Keep well here."</p>	<p>Jde ti to dobře. "You are doing very well."</p>
<p>Umíš se taky zlobit? "Can you also get angry?"</p>	<p>Ještě jednou. "Once more."</p>

Může se tady kouřit? "Is smoking allowed here?"	Brzdi, nebo narazíš! "Brake, or else you'll crash!"
---	---

Můžem tam jít spolu.

"You can go there together."

VOCABULARY PHRASE USAGE

umět

"can do (st)," "to be able to do (st)," "to be good at (st)"

The word *umět* is used with skills, abilities, language etc. Related words in the Czech language with the same root word *umě* are: *umění* ("art"), *umělec* ("artist male"), *umělkyně* ("artist female"), *umělecký* ("artistic").

It's used in examples like this: (*já*) *umím vařit, plavat, lyžovat* ("I can"/ "know how to cook, swim, ski")..or..(*já*) *umím německy, česky, anglicky* ("I can"/ "know how to speak German, Czech, English").

Here's how to conjugate *umět*: *já umím* ("I know"), *ty umíš* ("you know"), *on/ona umí* ("he/she knows"), *my umíme* ("we know"), *vy umíte* ("you know," used both formally and informally), *oni umí* ("they know").

For example:

1. *On si umí poradit.*
"He knows how to help himself. "

jezdit na něčem/ jezdit někam

"to ride (on something)," "to go (somewhere)"

Jezdit ("to go," "ride") is an imperfective verb and although it is a similar word to *jet* ("to go," "to ride"), the difference is that *jezdit* contains a sense of regularity.

Use *jezdit* to say, for example, *do práce jezdím vlakem* ("I go to work by train"), meaning "Whenever I go to work I take the train.! Compare this to *jedu vlakem* ("I'm going by train"), meaning "Right now I'm going by train." The meaning of regular action can be used for other situations and sentences such as *jezdím na koni* ("I ride a horse"), or *jedu na koni* ("I'm riding a horse"), or *jezdit na dovolenou* ("to go

on holidays") meaning every year, on a regular basis, as opposed to *jet na dovolenou*, meaning just now or just once.

When it comes to transportation, such as vehicles where one needs to get inside, *jezdit* is usually not used with the preposition *na* ("onto"). Instead, you conjugate the noun. I.e. *jezdit autem* ("go by car"), *jezdit metrem* ("go by metro"), *jezdit autobusem* ("go by bus"), *jezdit tramvají* ("go by tram"). However, with a mode of transport where one needs to get up onto something in order to ride it, such as a bike or horse, the preposition *na* is needed. I.e. *Jezdit na koni* ("ride a horse"), *jezdit na kole* ("ride a bike"), *jezdit na motorce* ("ride a motorbike"), *jezdit na bruslích* ("to roller-skate").

For example:

1. *Jezdíme na dovolenou do Itálie.*
"We (usually) go on holiday to Italy. "

GRAMMAR

The Focus Of This Lesson Is Using the Present Tense and Imperfective Verbs to Talk About One's Own Skills.

Jo, jezdím asi dva roky.

"Yeah, I've been roller-skating for about two years. "

1. The modal verb *mocet*

Mocet translates as "can, be able, could, is possible" and can be very useful when you want to talk about what you can or can't do.

When used formally, *mocet* can also be written as *moci*, meaning "to be able, can." In the formal form, the verb is slightly irregular in conjugation.

The modal verb *mocet* has no meaning on its own and is used to modify the main verb.

A modal verb is usually followed by a verb in its infinitive form.

I.e.

Můžu řídit "I can drive."

Furthermore, the verb can be followed by an object in its accusative form.

i.e.

Můžu řídit motorku. "I can drive a motorcycle."

How *mocet / moci* conjugates according to the person:

(já) můžu / mohu "I can, I'm able"

(ty) můžeš "you can"

(on/ ona) může "he/ she can"

(my) můžem "we can"

(vy) můžete "you can (also formal speech)"

(oni) můžou / mohou "they can"

For example:

Můžu tě naučit bruslit. "**I can** teach you roller-skating."

Můžem jít do parku bruslit. "**We can** go roller-skating to a park."

Tady se bruslit **může**. "**It is possible** to roller-skate here."

Já už **můžu** bruslit. "**I'm** already **able to** roller-skate."

Mocet should not be confused with umět ("to know how").

Umět ("to know," "how to," "can") is used with skills, abilities, and languages

i.e.

Umím bruslit, lyžovat, zpívat ("I can roller-skate," "I can ski," "I can sing.")

Umím anglicky, německy, japonsky ("I can speak English, German, and Japanese.")

How to distinguish between *mocet* and *umět*:

umí bruslit "She can roller-skate," or "She knows how to roller-skate."

může bruslit "She is able to roller-skate," or "She is allowed to roller-skate."

2. Imperfective verbs - introduction

Unlike English, Czech language has only three basic tenses-present, past, and future. But this simplicity in tenses is compensated for by aspects.

The aspects of the Czech verbs are:

1. Perfective

2. Imperfective

The perfective aspect and verbs can be used to talk about present, completed actions, and completed actions in the future. The imperfective aspect and verbs are used to talk about general and ongoing activity, or ongoing activity and states in the future. Only imperfective verbs have a present tense referring to something that is happening now.

E.g.

Look at the imperfective aspects of *brzdit*, *jezdit* "to break/slow down" and "to ride/drive."

(*Já*) *brzdím*. "I'm slowing down."

(*Já*) *jezdím na kole*. "I'm riding a bike."/ "I'm on bike."

Most of the time Czech verbs are in pairs, and one is perfective, the other imperfective. From an English perspective, both verbs have the same meaning, but the difference is in their aspect. That means they differ in the sense of completion or incompleteness of an action.

Imperfective aspect and verbs

This indicates incomplete, ongoing, habitual, reversed, or repeated actions without a reference to their completion.

Perfective aspect and verbs

This indicates actions or a set of actions that have been finished completely.

Most basic verbs without a prefix are imperfective.

To make such a verb perfective, we just need to add the prefix.

There is more than one prefix, such as, *na-*, *o-*, *po-*, *u-*, *vy-*, *s-*, *z-*, *za-*.

In this lesson we will deal with the **imperfective verbs**.

They are used to express:

*In the following section, let's have a look at the imperfective verb *jezdit* ("to ride/drive")

An action that we repeat on a regular basis:

For example:

1. *Jezdím na kole každé ráno.* "I ride a bike every morning."

An action that is in progress:

For example:

1. *Ted' jezdím na kole.* "Now I'm riding a bike."

The duration of an action:

For example:

Past continuous

1. *Jezdil jsem na kole celé ráno.* "I was riding my bike the whole morning."

Present continuous

1. *Jezdím na kole už celé ráno.* "I've been riding a bike all morning."

An action that has a very general character:

For example:

1. *Rád jezdím na kole.* "I like to ride a bike."

2. *Příští rok budu jezdit víc na kole.* "Next year I will ride my bike more."

In the above examples, we don't really have too many specifics as to whether the riding, was, or will be completed, hence the use of the imperfective verb *jezdit* ("to ride"). Imperfective verbs can form present, past, and the compound future tenses.

Some Czech verbs only appear in the imperfective form.

For example:

Czech	"English"
<i>být</i>	"to be"
<i>moc</i>	"to be able"
<i>muset</i>	"have to/ must"

<i>vědět</i>	"to know"
<i>chtít</i>	"to want"
<i>ležet</i>	"to lie"
<i>sedět</i>	"to sit"

Examples from the dialogue:

A jezdíš už dobře?

"And can you do it well?"

Jde to. Ještě neumím moc dobře brzdit.

"Could be better. I can't brake very well yet. "

Sample Sentences

Obě mé děti umí bruslit.

"Both of my children can ice skate."

Už umím řídit motorku.

"I can ride a motorcycle now. "

Sestra umí jezdit na koni.

"My sister can ride a horse."

CULTURAL INSIGHT

Outdoor activities

Roller-skating is very popular in the Czech Republic. Many new tracks have been designed not only within cities, but also across the country going from town to town, or around lakes and national parks. The most popular one is in Šumava National Park (<http://www.npsumava.cz/en/>). Depending on the season, some of other popular activities are mushroom picking in forests in the autumn, or blueberry picking in summer. Less common, but labelled as a renaissance of the use of medical herbs, is picking healing herbs in nature, especially for common illnesses such as colds, sore throats etc. In recent years Czechs have become more interested in exploring their own country and original culture, which is resulting in more people visiting Czech heritage sites, such as castles, manors, or

other historical sites. Some of the most visited places are castles in Český Krumlov and Hluboká.

Useful expression:

stezka pro in-line bruslení

"a track for in-line skating (roller-skating)"

LESSON NOTES

Beginner S1 #2

Finding a Place to Call Home in the Czech Republic

CONTENTS

2	Czech
2	English
3	Vocabulary
3	Sample Sentences
4	Vocabulary Phrase Usage
6	Grammar
12	Cultural Insight

2

CZECH

1. Matěj: Konečně máme nový byt. Větší a světlejší. Jde sem hodně slunce.
2. Helena: To zní dobře. Kde přesně to je?
3. Matěj: Asi deset minut pěšky od stanice metra. Jsme jen o ulici dál než předtím.
4. Helena: Tam u té velké křižovatky?
5. Matěj: Jo. Ale máme okna směrem do parku. Takže to není hlučný. Hned za rohem je velký supermarket.
6. Helena: To máte fajn. Ve kterém jste patře?
7. Matěj: Ve čtvrtém.
8. Helena: Někdy se přijdu podívat.
9. Matěj: Určitě přijď. Budu se těšit.

ENGLISH

1. Matěj: Finally, we have a new flat. Bigger and brighter. We get lots of sunshine.
2. Helena: That sounds good. Where is it exactly?
3. Matěj: About ten minutes on foot from the metro station. Just one street farther than before.
4. Helena: You mean by the big crossroad?

CONT'D OVER

5. Matěj: Yes, but our windows face the park, so it's not noisy. There's a large grocery store around the corner.
6. Helena: You're lucky. Which floor are you on?
7. Matěj: On the fourth floor.
8. Helena: I'll come visit at some point.
9. Matěj: Sure. I'll look forward to it.

VOCABULARY

Czech	English	Class
velký	large, big	adjective
světlý	bright, light	adjective
sem	here, to here	adverb
kde	where	pronoun, adverb
ulice	street	noun
dál	further, farther	adverb
tam	there	adverb
směr	direction	noun
hlučný	noisy	adjective
roh	corner	noun

SAMPLE SENTENCES

<p>Máme velký dům.</p> <p>"We have a big house."</p>	<p>Tenhle byt je světlý.</p> <p>"This apartment is bright."</p>
---	--

<p>Pojď sem! "Come here!"</p>	<p>Kde je záchod? "Where is the toilet?"</p>
<p>Kde jsi včera byl? "Where have you been yesterday?"</p>	<p>Kde je záchod? "Where is the bathroom?"</p>
<p>Tohle je široká ulice. "This is a wide street."</p>	<p>Jdem kousek dál. "Let's go a little further."</p>
<p>Tam radši nechod'. "Better don't go there."</p>	<p>Nákupní tašku dejte prosím tam. "Please, put the shopping bags there."</p>
<p>Ukažte mi směr, prosím. "Show me the direction, please."</p>	<p>Tady je to moc hlučný. "This place is too noisy."</p>
<p>Pozor na ten ostrý roh. "My friend works at a grocery store on the corner of the street."</p>	<p>Můj kamarád pracuje v potravinách na rohu ulice. "My friend works on a grocery store at the corner of the street."</p>

VOCABULARY PHRASE USAGE

o ulici dál

"one street farther"

O is a preposition used in many ways. Its meaning can be "about," "of," "on," "for," "during," or "at." In this particular case it is used to express that something is farther from here. *Ulice* means "street" and *dál* means "further" or "farther." The last two words can be replaced by anything else depending on the topic of the sentence.

Here are examples of the use of the preposition *o* in other scenarios but with the same meaning of "by," expressing difference: *O centimetr míň* ("less by one centimeter" or "one centimeter less"), *o jednu policičku výš* ("higher by one shelf"), *o dva schody níž* ("lower by two stairs"), *o dva dny dýl* ("longer by two days"), *o rok starší* ("older by one year"), *o hodinu pozdě* ("late by one hour"), *o dva kroky blíž* ("closer by two steps"), *o něco výš* ("a little higher/ higher by a little"), *o trochu hlouběji* ("a little deeper/ deeper by little") , *o něco dál* ("a little further/ further by little").

For example:

1. *Zajít si o ulici dál.*
"To stray one street further."

směrem do...

"towards..."

Směr means "direction" and *do* is a preposition with more than one meaning, but in this case because we are talking about direction, *do* means "into, to, towards." *Směrem do* means literally "direction to/ toward." The preposition *do* is often part of another whole word which has the meaning of direction or motion and is not always translated in English as one word. For example, *dolů* ("down"), *doleva* ("to the left"), *doprava* ("to the right"), and *doprostřed* ("to the middle").

Směrem (do) is used in situations like the following:

jít směrem do města ("walk toward the city center"), *mít okna směrem do ulice* ("to have windows (situated) toward the street"), *otočit směrem dozadu* ("turn backward/ toward the rear"), *dívat se směrem dopředu* ("to look ahead/ toward the front"), *lézt směrem dolů* ("crawl/ go/ move downwards"), *běžet směrem do lesa* ("run toward the forest"), *výlet směrem do hor* ("a trip heading to the mountains"), *jet směrem do Prahy* ("drive toward Prague"), *tlačit směrem dovnitř* ("push inward").

Do can be sometimes replaced by another preposition *k* or *na*, of which also means "toward."

But it's not possible to do this with all sentences containing the word *směrem* and the preposition *do*. A few examples of possible changes are *běžet směrem k lesu* ("run toward the forest"), *jet směrem na Prahu* ("drive toward Prague").

For example:

1. *Hlavní vchod je směrem do postranní ulice.*
"The main entry is toward the side street. "

hned za rohem

"just round the corner"

Hned means "immediately," *za* is preposition meaning "behind, round, after, beyond," and *roh* is a noun meaning "corner." The phrase *hned za rohem* refers to "location," either literal or figurative. The literal one is when we speak about a particular place we know that is actually located round the corner from where we are. The figurative is a suggestion that the place in question is not far away and can be reached easily.

Here are some examples with the literal meaning of *hned za rohem* ("just round the corner"):

škola je hned za rohem našeho domu ("The kindergarten is just around the corner of our house"), *tady hned za rohem prodávají zmrzlinu* ("Here, just around the corner they sell ice-cream").

Figurative uses:

Nemusím jezdit daleko, škola je hned za rohem ("I don't need to drive far, school is just around the corner.") *to je hned za rohem, asi dvě zastávky autobusem* ("It's just around the corner, about two stops by bus.") Here the meaning is that it's not really far away and going two stops by bus is fine.

For example:

1. *Počkej na mě hned za rohem.*
"Wait for me just round the corner. "

GRAMMAR

The Focus Of This Lesson Is Using Comparative and Superlative

Adjectives and to Talk About Place and Location

Konečně máme nový byt. Větší a světlejší. Jde sem hodně slunce.
"Finally we have a new flat. Bigger and lighter. We get lots of sun shine. "

1. Adjectives

Czech language has two kinds of adjectives, **hard** and **soft**, divided by the ending of the word, *ý* or *í*.

Adjectives also change their endings according to their gender (masculine, feminine, neuter), case, and the number of the nouns they refer to.

masculine *světlý byt* ("bright, light flat")

feminine *světlá kuchyň* ("bright, light kitchen")

neuter *světlé/ý* křeslo* ("bright, light armchair")

**ý* is the spoken form while *é* is a written form

Hard adjectives end with the long hard vowel *ý*

i.e.

velký ("large"), *malý* ("small"), *starý* ("old"), *nový* ("new"), *světlý* ("bright"), *tmavý* ("dark").

Soft adjectives end by soft long vowel *í*

i.e.

cizí ("foreign, strange"), *jarní* ("spring, vernal"), *zimní* ("wintery"), *inteligentí* ("intelligent"), *ryzí* ("pure").

*The soft adjectives do not change their form according to gender but remain in the original form.

Grading adjectives into comparatives and superlatives isn't very difficult in most cases and the process follows a certain rule. For example, *velký, větší, největší* ("big," "bigger," "the biggest"). Let's check out some more:

Czech dictionary form (Masculine)	Czech comparative (Masculine)	Czech superlative (Masculine)	English adjective dictionary form
<i>hlučný</i>	<i>hlučnější</i>	<i>nejhlučnější</i>	"noisy"
<i>pěkný</i>	<i>pěknější</i>	<i>nejpěknější</i>	"pretty"
<i>studený</i>	<i>studenější</i>	<i>nejstudenější</i>	"cold"

<i>tichý</i>	<i>tišší</i>	<i>nejtišší</i>	"quiet"
<i>vysoký</i>	<i>vyšší</i>	<i>nejvyšší</i>	"high"
<i>moderní</i>	<i>modernější</i>	<i>nejmodernější</i>	"modern"
<i>cizí</i>	<i>cizejší</i>	<i>nejcizejší</i>	"strange"
<i>populární</i>	<i>populárnější</i>	<i>nejpopulárnější</i>	"popular"

Comparative form:

Both the adjectives ending with *-ý* and the adjectives ending with *-í* mostly change their ending to *-ější*, *-ější* in their comparative form, although certain very common adjectives ending with *-ý* have a shorter ending *-ší*.

nový = *novější* ("new," "newer")

starý = *starší* ("old," "older")

Superlative form:

The superlative is created by adding the prefix *nej* at the beginning of the comparative form.

nejstudnější ("the coldest")

nejpěknější ("the prettiest")

nejširší ("the widest")

nejhlubší ("the deepest")

nejvyšší ("the highest")

nejzdravější ("the healthiest")

nejmoudřejší ("the wisest")

nejpopulárnější lokalita ("the most popular location")

nejmodernější byt ("the most modern flat")

Please note that NOT ALL *í* adjectives can follow the above pattern. Some are not flexible and only have one form. For example all animal adjectives will always just finish by *í* and cannot be formed into *-ější*, *-ější*, or *nej-*.

Example:

kočičí potrava ("cats food")

You may have noticed some changes of consonants when grading the adjectives into comparative and superlatives. These changes are regular in the following ways:

ch

k

k

ck

sk

r

h

Feminine and neuter adjectives:

You already know that feminine adjectives end with **-a**, and neuter adjectives end with **-é**. However, when they are graded into comparative and superlative form, they change exactly the same way as the masculine gender.

i.e.

masculine *teplý (byt/ flat) teplejší nejteplejší*

("warm," "warmer," "the warmest")

feminine *teplá (barva/ colour) teplejší nejteplejší*

("warm," "warmer," "the warmest")

neuter *teplé (topení/ heating) teplejší nejteplejší*

("warm," "warmer," "the warmest")

Irregular comparatives:

Czech dictionary form (Masculine)	Czech comparative (Masculine)	Czech superlative (Masculine)	English dictionary form
<i>dobrý</i>	<i>lepší</i>	<i>nejlepší</i>	"good"
<i>špatný</i>	<i>horší</i>	<i>nejhorší</i>	"bad"

<i>malý</i>	<i>menší</i>	<i>nejmenší</i>	"small"
<i>velký</i>	<i>větší</i>	<i>největší</i>	"big"

Note:

With all adjectives, if they cannot follow the above pattern of comparative or superlative form, or if that pattern seems too difficult to express, you can use descriptive words *více/ víc* ("more") and *nejvíce/ nejvíc* ("most").

For example:

teplý byt víc teplý byt nejvíc teplý byt

"warm flat" "warmer flat" "the warmest flat"

jarní barva víc jarní barva nejvíc jarní barva

"spring color" "more spring color" "the most spring color"

2. Adverbs and prepositions of location

When talking about the location of buildings there are a few prepositions and phrases that will come in handy. Let's go through them one by one:

vedle a preposition, meaning "next to"

před a preposition meaning "in front of"

u a preposition meaning "at, by, next to, near"

od a preposition meaning "from"

za a preposition meaning "behind"

dál an adverb meaning "further, farther"

tam an adverb meaning "over there, there"

daleko an adverb meaning "far"

blízko an adverb meaning "close"

na levo a phrase meaning "on the left"

na pravo a phrase meaning "on the right"

doprava a phrase meaning "to the right"

doleva a phrase meaning "to the left"

na druhé straně a phrase meaning "on the other side of the street"

za rohem a phrase meaning "round the corner"

směrem do a phrase meaning "toward"

u tý... a phrase meaning "by the..."

Now that we know all the necessary words, let's have a look at a few sample sentences:

1. *Bydlím hned vedle pošty.*

"I live right next to the post office."

2. *Před domem je malé parkoviště.*

"In front of the house, there is a small parking place."

3. *Za domem je krásná zahrada.*

"There's a lovely garden behind the house."

Examples from the dialogue:

Asi deset minut pěšky od stanice metra. Jsme jen o ulici dál než předtím.

"About ten minutes on foot from the metro station. Just one street further than before. "

Jo. Ale máme okna směrem do parku. Takže to není hlučný. Hned za rohem je velký supermarket.

"Yes, but our windows face towards the park. So it's not noisy. There is a large grocery store around the corner. "

Sample Sentences

Cesta je teď rychlejší a jednodušší.

"The journey is now quicker and simpler. "

O ulici dál je parkoviště.

"The parking place is one street further."

Druhé dveře vedou směrem do dvora.
"The other door leads into a courtyard. "

CULTURAL INSIGHT

Housing in the Czech Republic

The most common type of housing occupied by Czech people are flats, blocks of flats and family houses. The most popular is so-called co-operative housing, which means that the entire house has its own management and each individual living space in a flat has an equal share of the ownership of the building. Everyone living in the flats pays money into a mutual fund and the house management takes care of house repairs, renovations, and maintenance.

Most of non co-operative occupied flats are rental properties, although over the last 8 years there has been a trend of buying flats or other properties in cities as an investment.

Family houses are mostly built on the outskirts of bigger cities, or located in the countryside.

Useful expression:

Družstevní bydlení
"Co-operative housing"

LESSON NOTES

Beginner S1 #3

Have You Been Left Outside in the Cold in the Czech Republic?

CONTENTS

2	Czech
2	English
3	Vocabulary
3	Sample Sentences
4	Vocabulary Phrase Usage
5	Grammar
10	Cultural Insight

3

CZECH

1. Matěj: Dobrý den, dnes je děsná zima, že?
2. Helena: To jo, mrzne.
3. Matěj: Už aby jel autobus. Čekáte dlouho?
4. Helena: No, asi patnáct minut.
5. Matěj: Aha, vypadá to na zpoždění. Od včera je zataženo a sněží.
6. Helena: To je pravda.
7. Matěj: Ta silnice je namrzlá. Snad se brzy dočkáme.
8. Helena: To doufám.
9. Matěj: Už vidím světla.
10. Helena: Hurá.

ENGLISH

1. Matěj: Hello, it's terribly cold today, isn't it?
2. Helena: Right, it's freezing.
3. Matěj: I can't wait for the bus. Have you been waiting long?
4. Helena: Well, about fifteen minutes.

CONT'D OVER

5. Matěj: I see, it looks like there's a delay. It's been cloudy since yesterday and snowing.
6. Helena: That's true.
7. Matěj: The road is icy. Hope the bus comes soon.
8. Helena: I hope so.
9. Matěj: I can see some lights now.
10. Helena: Hooray.

VOCABULARY

Czech	English	Class
zima	cold	adjective, noun
mrznout	to freeze	imperfective verb
už aby	can't wait, may the...	phrase
no	well	expression, particle
aha	I see	interjection
vypadat	to look like	imperfective verb
zpoždění	delay	noun
namrzlý	icy, frosted	adjective
doufat	to be hopeful	imperfective verb
hurá	hooray	interjection

SAMPLE SENTENCES

<p>Letos je tuhá zima. "This year the cold is severe."</p>	<p>Venku hrozně mrzne. "It's freezing outside."</p>
<p>Už aby bylo jaro! "May the spring come! (I can't wait for the spring)"</p>	<p>No..to se uvidí. "Well...we shall see."</p>
<p>No, aspoň jsem to zkusil. "Well, at least I tried."</p>	<p>Aha, to jsem nevěděl. "I see, I didn't know that."</p>
<p>Vypadáš stále mladě. "You look still young."</p>	<p>To musí vypadat upraveně. "It must look neat."</p>
<p>Vlak má zpoždění 20 minut. "The train has a 20 minute delay."</p>	<p>Ta silnice je namrzlá. "The road is icy."</p>
<p>Doufám, že už ti je líp. "I hope you feel better now."</p>	<p>Hurá, už je pátek! "Hooray, it's already Friday!"</p>

VOCABULARY PHRASE USAGE

už aby...

"can't wait, it's high time"

Už aby is a useful phrase with a wishful meaning. *Už* means "already" in English, and *aby* is a particle from Czech grammar meaning "if." Therefore, in literal translation, the phrase means "if already" (something is/ will happen etc).

This phrase is used when we can't wait for somebody/something to come, to happen, to change etc. We use it in sentences such as *Už aby bylo léto!* ("I wish it was summer already"), *už aby tu byli* ("I can't wait for them to be here!"), *už aby bylo zítra!* ("C'mon, roll on tomorrow!"), and *už chci aby se vrátil* ("I hope he comes back soon!"). Please note that in Czech the verb in all the sentences needs to be in past tense to express the "if" or "if only."

For example:

1. *Už aby začaly prázdniny.*
"I can't wait for the (school) holidays to start."

to doufám

"I hope so"

To doufám is a phrase meaning "I hope so" in English. It's not a literal translation because *to* literally means "it" and *doufat* is a verb meaning "to have hopes, to be hopeful." *To doufám* can be also replaced with *doufám, že ano* ("I hope yes"), or when expressing the opposite, *doufám, že ne* ("I hope not"). *že* is a conjunction meaning "that" in English, which can be often omitted in English, but not in the Czech language. For example, *Doufat, že se nic nestane* ("to be hopeful that nothing will happen"), and *doufám, že přijdeš včas* ("I hope that you come in time").

To doufám is a phrase used as an answer to something just said. For example, if your friend asks *přijedou pro tebe na letiště?* ("Will they come to the airport for you?) the answer might be *to doufám* ("I hope so"). If you are using the phrase *doufám, že ano* or *doufám, že ne*, the conjunction *že* ("that") cannot be omitted in the sentence. You cannot say *doufám ano* or *doufám ne*.

For example:

1. A: *Máš dost peněz?*
B: *To doufám.*
A: "Do you have enough money?"
B: "I hope so. "

GRAMMAR

The Focus Of This Lesson Is Using Interjections in a Natural Way and How to Say that Something Looks Like Something Else.

Už aby jel autobus. Čekáte dlouho?

"I can't wait for the bus. Have you been waiting long?"

Interjections

In Czech grammar, "interjections" (*citoslovce*) are inflexible words coming at number 10 (the last number) on the parts of speech scale. Interjections express

mood, feelings, sentiment (of a person) and they also indicate voices and sounds. Interjections do not always have a grammatical connection with the rest of the sentence and they can just fill empty spaces in sentences. They are usually separated from other words by commas or an exclamation mark if they feel like an independent word. Some interjections, especially those that indicate sounds or those that can replace verbs, don't have to be separated by commas. For example, *Chlapec **hop** do vody*, "The boy **jump(ed)** into the water."

Interjections are divided into:

Subjective (further divided into *impulsive* and *interactive*). These include words expressing emotions or feelings - *ach* "uh," *bože* "God," *fuj* "yuck," and words for contact *ahoj* "hello," *nazdar* "hi", *pá* "bye," or *sbohem* "goodbye."

Objective (further divided into *onomatopoeia* and *sounds*). These include words such as *chacha* "haha," *prásk* "bang," *haf* "woof," *mňau* "meow."

Since some interjections have no grammatical connection to the actual sentence or words, they can act independently. This means they can stand on their own as a short sentence. For example, *Ano*, "Yes," *Ne*, "No," and *Jo*, "Yep."

Furthermore, interjections can also include expressions like *Promiňte!* "Sorry!", *Ne, díky!* "No, thanks!", *Ježíš!* "Jesus!", *Hej, to je moje!* "Hey, that's mine!", or exclamations like *Panečku!* ("Wow!") or *Hej!* ("Hey!").

Common Czech subjective interjections, particles and adverbs

Interjections (*citoslovce*)

1. *Tak dobře* ("Okay")
2. *Jé* ("Wow")
3. *Uf* ("Phew")
4. *Ach jo* ("Oh man")
5. *Jejda* ("Whoops")
6. *Aha* ("I see")
7. *hurá* ("hooray")

Particles (*částice*):

1. *Ano* ("Yes")

2. *Ne* ("No")
3. *Ámen* ("Amen")
4. *No* ("Well") *no teda!* ("Well, wow!")
5. *Ale ne* ("Oh no")
6. *Že?* ("Isn't it?") *je zima, že?* ("It's cold, isn't it?")
7. *Ty jo!* ("Blimey!")
8. *Co?* ("Huh?")
9. *Asi ano/ ne* ("I guess yes/no")
10. *Snad* ("Hopefully")
11. *Prý* ("Supposedly")
12. *Jasně* ("Sure thing")
13. *Určitě* ("For sure, definitely")

Adverbs (příslovce)

1. *přesně tak!* ("Right on!")

Phrases from the dialogue:

To jo. ("That's right.")

No, asi... ("Well, about...")

To je pravda ("That's true")

To doufám. ("I hope so.")

Hurá! ("Hooray!")

Vypadá to na... ("It looks like...")

Vypadat is an imperfective verb and can have several meanings. Let's take a look at how it's used in the dialogue.

Matěj is talking about possible delay of the bus. He says:

Vypadá to na zpoždění. ("It looks like there's a delay.")

1. To seem, to look like

The verb *vypadat* in the dialogue has the meaning of "to seem, to look like."

In the sentence, we need to add the *to* ("it") to give the sentence a subject, and *na*, a preposition meaning "like" in this case.

Example sentences:

Vypadá to na déšť. ("It looks like rain"/"It seems it'll rain.")

Vypadá to na předčasný konec. ("It looks like an early end"/ "It seems it'll end early.")

Vypadá to na průšvih. ("It looks like trouble"/"It seems there'll be trouble.")

Vypadá to na zlomeninu. ("It looks like a fracture"/"It seems it's a fracture.")

2. having an appearance

jak (on/ona) vypadá? ("What does he/she look like?")

vypadá jak tulák ("He looks like a tramp.")

vypadá jak dítě ("She looks like a child.")

vypadá jako bankéř ("He looks like a banker.")

3. giving the impression (of being something)

(on) vypadá mladší než je ("He looks younger than he is.")

(ona) vypadá na svůj věk ("She looks her age.")

(ona) vypadá dobře/hrozně/staře/nešťastně ("She looks good/awful/old/unhappy")

Language tip

Weather adjectives:

In the dialogue, the two people at the bus stop talk about the current weather that is causing the bus they are waiting for to be delayed. Here are the adjectives from the conversation, plus other adjectives connected to the weather.

Czech	English
<i>zima</i>	"cold"
<i>zmrzlý</i>	"frozen"
<i>chladný</i>	"cold/ chilly"
<i>zataženo</i>	"cloudy"
<i>pochmurno</i>	"gloomy"
<i>větrno</i>	"windy"
<i>teplo</i>	"warm"
<i>horko</i>	"hot"
<i>příjemně</i>	"pleasant"
<i>slunečno</i>	"sunny"
<i>mokro</i>	"wet"

Example sentences using weather adverbs:

1. *Od včera je zataženo.*
"It's been cloudy since yesterday."
2. *Dneska mrzne.*
"Today is freezing."
3. *Celý den je pochmurno.*
"All day has been gloomy."
4. *Odpoledne očekávejte větrno.*
"Expect a windy afternoon."
5. *Začíná být velké horko.*
"It's beginning to be very hot."
6. *Navečer už je příjemně.*
"Toward the evening it is pleasant."
7. *Víkendu bude chladný a mokrá.*
"The weekend will be cold/ chilly and wet."

Examples from the dialogue:

To je pravda.
"That's true. "

To doufám.
"I hope so. "

Sample Sentences

Už aby spravili ten výtah.
"It's high time they fixed the elevator. "

Nikoho to nezajímá, to je pravda.
"Nobody is interested, that's true."

Mají dnes otevřeno? To doufám.
"Are they open today? I hope so. "

CULTURAL INSIGHT

Transportation

Cars seem to be the most popular means of transportation in the Czech Republic, also thanks to the good road infrastructure. The Czech Republic produces its own cars called Škoda with a production company based outside Prague in Mladá Boleslav.

Buses are the second most used transportation means, with routes across the Czech Republic. Great international service is available too. City buses are a norm in all individual regions of the Czech Republic, in cities and towns. Long distance and international bus services have been modernised and there is a good choice of private companies, too. The bus services are often in competition with railways.

Czech railways were managed solely by the state until 2002 and then partially privatised. There are now many private companies too. The railway services are dominant in terms of international travel, with great connections between the Czech Republic and major western, central and eastern European cities. For example, a night service train is offered by City Night Line, and there's daily train service on Eurocity trains.

Useful expression:

mezinárodním autobusovým linkám.
"International bus lines"

LESSON NOTES

Beginner S1 #4

Getting Your Address Wrong in the Czech Republic

CONTENTS

- 2 Czech
- 2 English
- 3 Vocabulary
- 3 Sample Sentences
- 4 Vocabulary Phrase Usage
- 5 Grammar
- 9 Cultural Insight

4

CZECH

1. Helena: Ahoj, je tady dodávka nábytku. Ty jsi něco objednal?
2. Matěj: To je ten mělký, dřevěný šuplík pod postel, co jsi chtěla.
3. Helena: To ne, tohle vypadá jako obrovská komoda. Tak dvacet kilo.
4. Matěj: Aha, to se sem k nám nevejde.
5. Helena: Co s tím?
6. Matěj: Řekni jim, že to musí být omyl.
7. Helena: No jo, asi mají špatný objednávkový číslo.
8. Matěj: Asi. Nebo špatnou adresu.
9. Helena: Řeknu jim to. Zatím čau.

ENGLISH

1. Helena: Hi, there's a furniture delivery here. Did you order something?
2. Matěj: It's the shallow wooden drawer you wanted for under the bed.
3. Helena: It's not. This looks like a massive chest of drawers. It's around twenty kilograms.
4. Matěj: Oh, it won't fit into our place.

CONT'D OVER

5. Helena: What should we do with it?
6. Matěj: Tell them it must be a mistake.
7. Helena: Right, they must have the wrong order number.
8. Matěj: Maybe. Or the wrong address.
9. Helena: I'll tell them. Bye for now.

VOCABULARY

Czech	English	Class
dodávat	to deliver	imperfective verb
objednat	to order	verb, perfective verb
mělký	shallow	adjective
dřevěný	wooden	adjective
obrovský	massive	adjective
komoda	chest of drawers	noun
vejít se	to fit in	perfective verb
omyl	mistake	adjective
špatný	wrong, incorrect	adjective

SAMPLE SENTENCES

<p>Máme dodávkový servis po celé republice.</p> <p>"We have delivery service all over the country."</p>	<p>Objednej si aspoň kafe.</p> <p>"Order at least a coffee."</p>
--	---

<p>Objednal jsem kávu taky pro tebe.</p> <p>"I ordered a coffee for you too."</p>	<p>Můžeme si objednat po internetu?</p> <p>"Can we order online?"</p>
<p>Všichni jsme si v restauraci objednali to samé.</p> <p>"All of us ordered the same at the restaurant."</p>	<p>Tahle miska je příliš mělká.</p> <p>"This bowl is too shallow."</p>
<p>Koupím dřevěný stůl.</p> <p>"I'll buy a wooden table."</p>	<p>Tady je obrovská díra.</p> <p>"There is a massive hole here."</p>
<p>Vestavěné komody jsou teď moderní.</p> <p>"Built-in chests of drawers are in fashion now."</p>	<p>Vejde se to do tašky?</p> <p>"Does it fit into the bag?"</p>
<p>Omylem jsem vzal cizí kufr.</p> <p>"I took the wrong suitcase by mistake."</p>	<p>Mám špatný telefonní číslo.</p> <p>"I have the wrong telephone number."</p>

VOCABULARY PHRASE USAGE

něco objednat

"to order something"

Objednat is a perfective verb that has several meanings in English. *Něco* means "something." One of the main meanings of this verb is "to order" something, in terms of products, meal etc. Another meaning is "to commission" something to be done, or "to reserve" something. And lastly, the verb can also mean "to make an appointment."

You can *objednat* something in terms of products, meals etc. I.e. *Objednat si jídlo* "to order food," or *objednat nový koberec* "to order a new carpet."

In terms of "to commission" something, for example when making an order for something to be done, you can say *práce na objednávku*, "a commissioned work,"

or *objednat si architekta na design* "to commission an architect to design" something.

The verb can also be translated as "to reserve," i.e. *objednat si stůl pro dva* ("to reserve a table for two"), or *objednat si knihy* ("to reserve some books"). And lastly, it can be used in terms of "to make an appointment". I.e. *objednat se k holiči* "to make an appointment at the barber's," or *objednat se k doktoru* "to make an appointment at doctor's."

For example:

1. *Objednám se k zubaři.*
"I'll make a dentist appointment. "

To musí být

"It must be..."

To- means "it, this," *musí* is "must, have to," and *být* is a verb meaning "to be." It can be used to introduce a guess, or to express necessity. And lastly, this phrase can also stand on its own where the meaning is "this has to be done, there is now other way."

Some examples of use in terms of guessing that something must be something/ somebody would be *to musí být naše kolo* "this must be our bike" (because it certainly looks like our bike), or *to musí být ztracené dítě* "it must be a lost child" (because there are no parents in sight). In terms of necessity, *to musí být dokonalý* "it must be perfect," *to musí být přesný* "it must be accurate," and *to musí být tip-top*, "it must be without faults."

For example:

1. *Ten schematický nákres musí být realný.*
"The schematic drawing must be realistic."

GRAMMAR

The Focus Of This Lesson Is Using Simple Present Tense to Describe a Happening and Ask for Advice.

Ahoj, je tady dodávka nábytku. Ty jsi něco objednal?

"Hi, there is a furniture delivery here. Did you order something?"

Explaining simple present tense

In English, we use a different tense in the present depending on whether it's an action that happens regularly or is happening now. In Czech, we have verbs that can express both using just one tense. Let's have a look at the verb *stěhovat* "to move," which is related to the conversation talking about something happening.

For example:

(general activity)

1. *Stěhujeme se každý rok.* "We move every year."

(happening now)

2. *Stěhujeme se teď.* "We are moving now."

In Czech, you use just one tense in the present, no matter whether the action happens regularly or is happening now. The *personal forms* of the present tense are expressed by the endings attached to the root of the verb. When we need to distinguish whether we are talking about a general activity or now activity (which is expressed by present continues in English), Czech people use time nouns to make this clear, such as *teď* "now," or *každý den* "every day."

For example:

Simple present tense

1. ***Stěhuje se*** každý rok. "**She moves** every year."

2. ***Stěhuje se dnes.*** "**She's** moving today."

1. ***Stěhuju se*** každý měsíc. "**I move** every month"

2. ***Stěhuju se (teď).*** "**I'm moving** (now)."

More examples of the present tense and present continuous in one verb can be seen in the the verb *jít* "to go":

Singular

jít "to go on foot"

1. *já jdu* "I go/ I'm going"

2. *ty jdeš* "you go/ you're going"

3. *on, ona, ono jde* "he, she, it goes/ is going"

Plural

1. *my jdeme* "we go/ we're going"

2. *vy jdete* "you go/ you're going" also formal speech

3. *oni jdou* "they go/ they're going"

However, there is a difference in Czech between *jít* ("to go, to be going") and *chodit* ("to go"). While *jít* is mostly used for something happening now, i.e. *jdu domů* "I am going home," or *jdeme do kina* "we are going to the cinema," *chodit* is used to express a regular activity.

For example, *chodím do školy* "I go to school," meaning on a regular basis, every day, etc. or *chodím na procházky*, "I go for walks," meaning every morning, or every week I go for a walk etc. The regularity is expressed through time nouns, such as "every morning, every day, every month, every week," etc.

Dodávat is the Czech verb for "**to deliver.**" It is an imperfective verb and just like the examples above, this verb can also express simple present tense or present continuous.

i.e.

Simple present tense (general activity)

Dodáváme čerstvé pečivo po celém městě.

"We deliver fresh bakery products all over town."

Dodáváme do deseti různých supermarketů.

"We deliver to ten different supermarkets."

(Oni) dodávají své zboží do několika dnů.

"They deliver their products within few days."

Present continuous (now activity)

Dnes dodáváme již do pátého supermarketu.

Today we are already delivering to the fifth supermarket.

Právě dodáváme poslední dvě objednávky.

"Right now we are delivering the last two orders."

*Ted' (oni) **dodávají** do domu číslo 53.*

"Now they are delivering to house number 53."

Notice how time expressions (today, right now, now) are used in order to distinguish the simple present and present continuous.

When Helena tells her husband that the item looks different from what he ordered, she uses the verb **vypadat**, "to look like." *Vypadat* is also an imperfective verb that can express both simple present and present continuous used in English.

*Tohle **vypadá** jako obrovská komoda.*

"This looks like a massive chest of drawers."

or

"This is looking like a massive chest of drawers."

This phrase can be used in a different context too:

*Dnes (ona) **vypadá** unaveně.* "She looks tired today."

"She's looking tired today."

*Vždycky **vypadá** unaveně.* "She looks always tired."

"She's always looking tired."

*Budoucnost **vypadá** slibně.* "The future looks promising."

"The future is looking promising."

Examples from the dialogue:

Co s tím?

"What should we do with this?"

Řekni jim, že to musí být omyl.

"Tell them it must be a mistake. "

Sample Sentences

Něco se tam děje.

"Something's happening there. "

Vypadá to, že kradou auto.

"It looks like they are stealing a car."

Zavoláme policii?

"Shall we call the police?"

CULTURAL INSIGHT

Deliveries in Czech

For Czech people, there are several types of delivery services available. The biggest national company is *Česká pošta* (the "Czech Post Office") that can deliver anything from letters to big parcels within the Czech Republic and abroad. If you need something delivered quickly, there are two services available: Parcel Express, which delivers on the same day or EMS, that delivers by the next day before 2 p.m.

More flexible services are available with private companies that offer *Kurýr* ("courier service"). The main aim of this service is to deliver an item to the place requested by the customer. Compared to the Post Office, there is a difference in speed, price and how things are handled. This service enables a lot of flexibility in terms of changes of address, collection, size and handing the package over to the customer.

MESSENGER is a type of courier service delivering post and parcels within the city of Prague as City Express Service, to Slovakia as Intercity Service, and to other cities in Europe as Express Service. For small items, such as forgotten keys, interview materials, or a parcels for a family member, this service works very quickly. Besides the standard services, this company can also take care of your food delivery from a restaurant, arrange the signing of a contract at your client's place, or the distribution of tickets.

Useful expression:

Poštovní a doručovatelské služby.

"Post and delivery services."

LESSON NOTES

Beginner S1 #5

Planning Your Future in the Czech Republic

CONTENTS

- 2 Czech
- 2 English
- 3 Vocabulary
- 3 Sample Sentences
- 5 Vocabulary Phrase Usage
- 6 Grammar
- 9 Cultural Insight

5

CZECH

1. Učitel: Děvčata, brzy promujete. Už víte co budete dělat potom?
2. Helena: Budu hledat práci.
3. Jitka: Já ještě nevím.
4. Učitel: Ve středu je seminář pro studenty. Postgraduální studium. Nechcete přijít?
5. Jitka: Ano, moc ráda. Středu mám volnou. Děkuju za pozvání. V kolik hodin?
6. Učitel: Je to v 16 (šestnáct) hodin.
7. Helena: Děkuju, já asi ne. Už jsem rozhodlá jít pracovat.
8. Učitel: Nic se neděje. Hodně štěstí při hledání.
9. Helena: Děkuju Vám.

ENGLISH

1. Teacher: Girls, you're graduating soon. Have you decided what to do after?
2. Helena: I'll look for a job.
3. Jitka: I don't know yet.
4. Teacher : On Wednesday there's a seminar for students, about postgraduate studies. Won't you come?

CONT'D OVER

5. Jitka: Yes, I will. This Wednesday I'm free. Thank you for the invitation. What time?
6. Teacher: It's at 4 p.m.
7. Helena: Thank you, but maybe not. I've already decided to work.
8. Teacher : That's all right. Good luck with your search.
9. Helena: Thank you.

VOCABULARY

Czech	English	Class
vědět	to know	verb, imperfective verb
hledat	to look for	verb, imperfective verb
středa	Wednesday	noun
chtít	to want	imperfective verb
přijít	to come	verb, perfective verb
pozdání	invitation	noun
hodina	hour	noun
asi	probably, I guess	particle
dít se	to happen, to be going on	imperfective verb
šťěstí	luck	noun

SAMPLE SENTENCES

<p>Vím jak se tam dostaneme. "I know how to get there."</p>	<p>Nevíme, kde se našlo tělo. "We do not know where the body was found. "</p>
--	--

<p>Hledáme, kde je východ. "We are looking for an exit."</p>	<p>Běž hledat mléko, já půjdu hledat maso a sejdeme se u pokladny. "I will look for the milk; you look for the bread, and meet me at the cash register."</p>
<p>Ve středu mám volno. "This Wednesday I've got time off."</p>	<p>Děti chtějí jít ven. "Children want to go out."</p>
<p>Chci se přestěhovat jinam. "I want to move elsewhere."</p>	<p>Chtěla bych nové brýle. "I would like new glasses."</p>
<p>Přijďte k nám na návštěvu. "Come to visit us."</p>	<p>Vím, že nechceš, abych přišel na párty. "I know you don't want me to come to the party."</p>
<p>Rád bych zítra přišel znovu, jestli by to bylo možné. "I would like to come again tomorrow, if possible."</p>	<p>Přijdeme na oběd "We'll come for lunch."</p>
<p>Dostala pozvání na svatbu. "She got an invitation for the wedding."</p>	<p>Hodiny odbíjí každou hodinu. "The clock strikes every hour."</p>
<p>Autobus jede za hodinu. "The bus goes in one hour."</p>	<p>Internet na hodinu. "Internet for one hour."</p>
<p>Tohle je asi její bratr. "This is probably her brother."</p>	<p>Co se tady děje? "What's happening here?"</p>

Něco se tu děje? "Is something happening here?"	Štěstí, že se nic nestalo! "It was lucky that nothing happened!"
---	--

VOCABULARY PHRASE USAGE

hledat

"to look for"

The imperfective verb *hledat* means to "look for, seek, dig, search, forage."

Depending on the sentence, the word *hledat* can be translated into English in several ways.

This is used in terms of looking for something lost *hledám ztracené klíče*, "I'm looking for my lost keys," *hledají ztracené dítě*, or "they are looking/ searching for a lost child."

In terms of looking to get somebody or something, it can be used as *hledám člověka na výpomoc doma*, "seeking a helper to assist at home," *hledám ubytování* "I'm seeking accommodation," or *hledá ho policie*, "he's wanted by the police."

For example:

1. *Hledáme nové pracovníky do kavárny.*

"We're looking for new staff for our cafe. "

nic se neděje

"it's all right, no problem"

This consists of *nic* "nothing," *se* "oneself," and *neděje* (the negative form of *-děje se-*, which means "to be happening").

This phrase is often used in reply to somebody's apology for something. The literal translation is "nothing is happening," but in loose translation the meaning is often "it's alright, no problem, don't worry, nevermind, etc."

For example, A: *zapomněla jsem přinést tu knížku!* "I forgot to bring the book!" B: *Nic se neděje.* "It's alright."

Another use of this phrase is when expressing that there is nothing happening at certain times. This can be something bothersome or not a big deal, depending on context, as in *čekám na nové heslo a nic se neděje*, "I'm waiting for a new password and nothing is happening" (implying irritation), *zatím prohráváme 1:2 s Kanadou, ale nic se neděje*, "So far we are losing 1:2 to Canada, but it doesn't matter" (implying the speaker is still calm because the result can change).

For example:

1. *Zboží Vám nesedí? Nic se neděje, vyměníme!*

"Our product doesn't fit you? Not a problem, we'll exchange it. "

GRAMMAR

The Focus Of This Lesson Is Using the Future Tense to Make an Invitation and Accepting and Declining Invitations.

Ve středu je seminář pro studenty. Postgraduální studium. Nechcete přijít?

"On Wednesday there is a seminar for students about postgraduate studies. Won't you come?"

1.Future tense

There are two ways to create the future tense in Czech. One is through the verb *být*, "to be," and the other is through the perfective verbs in the present.

For the first case, the stem of the word **bud-** gives the future meaning. Here's how to conjugate the verb *být* for each person:

The future tense of the verb *být* "to be":

Singular

Czech	"English"
<i>(já) budu</i>	"I will be."
<i>(ty) budeš</i>	"you will be."
<i>(on, ona, ono) bude</i>	"he/she/it will be."

Plural

Czech	"English"
(my) budeme*	"we will be."
(vy) budete	"you will be." (also applies to the formal speech)
(oni) budou	"they will be."

* Native speakers often do not pronounce the "e" at the end. So in spoken form, the "e" does not have to be pronounced. However, this can vary by region. You may hear some native speakers pronounce the "e," but many people don't.

To create the future tense of an actual verb, you need to add the infinitive form of this verb to the conjugated future form of *být*, "to be."

Let's take a verb from the dialogue. The teacher is asking the two students what they will do after graduation. He uses the verb *dělat*, "to do," and the conjugated future tense of *být*, "to be." *Co budete dělat?* "What will you do?"

být* in the future tense + *dělat

Singular

1. *Já budu dělat.* "I will do."
2. *Ty budeš dělat.* "You will do."
3. *On, ona, ono bude dělat.* "He, she, it will do."

1. *My budem dělat.* "We will do."
2. *Vy budete dělat.* "You will do." (Also applies to formal speech.)
3. *Oni budou dělat.* "They will do."

To create a **negative form**, simply add **ne-** in front of the future form, *bud-*.

*Já **ne**budu dělat.* "I won't do."

*Ty **ne**budeš dělat.* "You won't do."

*On **ne**bude dělat.* "He won't do."

Let's look more closely at the future tense with one more example from the conversation.

The teacher is inviting the students to come for a postgraduate seminar. He uses the phrase *Nechcete přijít?* "Don't you want to come?" which expresses the future tense through the verb *přijít*, "to come."

Přijít (a completed action) is an example when a perfective verb is used to express a completed action in the future without using the conjugated verb *být*, "to be."

For example:

Singular

1. *Já přijdu.* "I will come."
2. *Ty přijdeš.* "You will come."
3. *On, on, ono přijde.* "He, she, it will come."

Plural

4. *My přijdem.* "We will come."
5. *Vy přijdete.* "You will come."
6. *Oni přijdou.* "They will come."

All perfective verbs work like this. But please note that many imperfective verbs have prefixes to make them perfective. For example, *jít* "to go," versus ***přijít*** "to come." *dělat*, "to do, to be doing" is an imperfective verb (the action is not completed), whilst ***udělat*** "to do, get something done" is a perfective verb (the action is completed). Prefixes are essential because of the way Czech verbs are formed and used. Here is a list of prefixes that make an imperfective verb perfective:

do-, na-, nad-, o-/ob-, od-, po-, pod-, pro-, pře-, před-, při-, roz-, s-, u-, v-, vy-, vz-, z-, za-.

Examples from the Dialogue

Ano, moc ráda. Středu mám volnou. Děkuju za pozvání. V kolik hodin?

"Yes, I do. This Wednesday I'm free. Thank you for the invitation. What time?"

Děkuju, já asi ne. Už jsem rozhodlá jít pracovat.

"Thank you, but maybe not. I've already decided to work. "

Sample Sentences

Určitě dorazíme, díky za pozvání.

"We'll definitely come, thank you for inviting us."

Zatím nic neslibuju, ale díky za pozvání.

"Right now we are not promising anything, but thank you for the invite."

*Tentokrát asi ne, já **ne**budu dělat. Nežlob se.*

"This time maybe not, I won't do it. Sorry."

CULTURAL INSIGHT

Education System

The education system in the Czech Republic has a long history, with mandatory schooling established in 1774. There are several levels of education: preschool, primary, secondary, undergraduate, postgraduate, and life-long education.

Preschools consist of nurseries and kindergartens. These are both public and private. Private schools are further divided into church kindergartens, private clubs, maternity centres, and alternative kindergartens (Montessori, Dalton, Waldorf and Forest Kindergartens).

Primary school education goes from ages 6 to 15 and is mandatory. The marking system gives children grades from 1-5, out of which 1 is the highest. Children receive a certificate (*vysvědčení*) at the end of each semester. Children don't need to wear uniforms.

Some universities in the Czech Republic are still state owned, such as the famous Charles University in Prague, but private universities have emerged in large numbers too. Among the state universities, there are economic, technical, polytechnical, language, art, music, veterinary, pharmaceutical departments, but there is also the state owned Czech Police Academy and University of Defence.

Useful expression:

Ministerstvo školství, mládeže a tělovýchovy.

"Ministry of Education, Youth and Sports."

LESSON NOTES

Beginner S1 #6

You Can Always Talk About the Weather in Czech!

CONTENTS

- 2 Czech
- 2 English
- 3 Vocabulary
- 3 Sample Sentences
- 4 Vocabulary Phrase Usage
- 5 Grammar
- 9 Cultural Insight

6

CZECH

1. Jitka: Slyšel jsi předpověď počasí? Pořád neustalý a vydatný déšť.
2. Matěj: Jo, slyšel. Jen liják a silný vítr.
3. Jitka: Hladiny řek už se prý zvedají. Hrozí povodně.
4. Matěj: Víím, je to špatný.
5. Jitka: V některých městech už probíhá evakuace lidí.
6. Matěj: No nazdar. Tak to nás asi zaplaví v centru města.
7. Jitka: Musíme být v pohotovosti, kdyby se to zhoršilo.
8. Matěj: Jo. Hlavně ať se nikdo neutopí!

ENGLISH

1. Jitka: Have you heard the weather forecast? Still heavy non-stop rain.
2. Matěj: Yeah, I did. Just a downpour and strong wind.
3. Jitka: The water level of rivers is rising. There is a threat of floods.
4. Matěj: I know. It's bad.
5. Jitka: In some cities people are already being evacuated.
6. Matěj: Blimey. So we might get flooded in the city center.

CONT'D OVER

7. Jitka: We have to be on alert, in case it gets worse.
8. Matěj: Right. I hope nobody drowns!

VOCABULARY

Czech	English	Class
předpověď	forecast	noun
liják	downpour	noun
hladina	water level	noun
hrozit	to threaten	imperfective verb
povodeň	water flood	noun
evakuace	evacuation	noun
řeka	river	noun
zaplavit	to flood, to swamp	perfective verb
pohotovost	alert, readiness	noun
utopit se	to drown oneself	imperfective verb

SAMPLE SENTENCES

<p>Dnešní předpověď počasí je polojasno.</p> <p>"Today's weather forecast is partly cloudy."</p>	<p>Podle předpovědi může o víkendu sněžit.</p> <p>"Yesterday's forecast said we might get snow this weekend."</p>
<p>Večer přijde liják.</p> <p>"Tonight will come a downpour."</p>	<p>Hladina vody je nízká.</p> <p>"The water level is low."</p>

<p>Tady nehrozí žádné nebezpečí.</p> <p>"There is no imminent danger here."</p>	<p>Povodeň rychle stoupá.</p> <p>"The flood water is rising quickly."</p>
<p>Evakuace lidí a zvířat je nutná.</p> <p>"Evacuation of people and animals is necessary."</p>	<p>Tady protéká řeka Labe.</p> <p>"Here flows the river Labe."</p>
<p>Velká voda může zaplavit údolí.</p> <p>"Big waters can flood the valley."</p>	<p>Zavolejte pohotovost!</p> <p>"Call the emergency number!"</p>
<p>Neplav daleko, mohl by ses utopit.</p> <p>"Don't swim far, you could drown."</p>	

VOCABULARY PHRASE USAGE

zvedat se

"to be rising up, to increase"

The imperfective verb *zvedat se* can have several meanings depending on the context. *Zvedat* means "to lift, to rise, to pick something up, to stand somebody/ something up." *Se* is the reflexive pronoun *se* ("oneself").

This phrase is used in terms of something going up, such as *zvedá se opona* ("the curtain is going up"), *hladina se zvedá* ("the water level is rising"), *zvedá se mi žaludek* ("my stomach is churning").

In terms of getting up from somewhere, it can be used as *zvedat se ze židle* ("to stand up from a chair"). In terms of getting up in order to leave, it can be used as *zvedat se k odchodu* ("getting up in order to leave").

For example:

1. *Zvedá se vítr.*

"The wind is rising."

probíhat

"to take place"

This imperfective verb means to "take place, be going on, be under way, be in motion."

When used in terms of something is taking place or is going on, it can be used as *na letišti probíhá stávka* ("There is a strike going on at the airport"), *právě probíhá fotbalový zápas* ("A football match is going on right now"), *probíhá evakuace lidí v Chile* ("The evacuation of people is going on in Chile"). Used in terms of something is under way, it can be used as *probíhají poslední přípravy* ("Final preparations are under way"), *na kolejích probíhají opravy* ("Railway repairs are under way"). Used in terms of motion, it can be used as *běžec probíhá finálním úsekem* ("The runner is passing the final part").

For example:

1. *Soutěž probíhá hladce.*

"The competition is going smoothly. "

být v pohotovosti

"to be on alert"

This is a phrase using the infinitive form *být*, "to be," the preposition *v* "in," and noun *pohotovost* meaning "alert, readiness, preparedness."

Beside the actual phrase, the noun *pohotovost* also means "emergency, ambulance, casualty." Thus, the use of the phrase *být v pohotovosti* can be as follows: in terms of an army/ soldiers "be on alert," in terms of an emergency "be on standby duty/ be on call," and in terms of a strike "be on strike alert."

For example:

1. *V pohotovosti je mnoho vojáků.*

"Many soldiers are on alert. "

GRAMMAR

The Focus Of This Lesson Is the Present Active Participle Using Imperfective Verbs to Talk to a Friend About Severe Weather.

Hladiny řek už se prý zvedají. Hrozí povodně.

"The water level of rivers are rising. There is a threat of floods."

Present active participle using imperfective verbs

The Present Active Participle in Czech is similar to the English "ing" expressing continuity or happening right now. This "ing" is part of so called participles, added to an imperfective verb in third person of singular or plural form. For example, "rising river, rising rivers, falling rain, shaking grounds", etc. This English "ing" ending corresponds to the endings *-oucí*, *-ící*, and *-jící* in Czech grammar. Examples:

padající strom "falling tree"

padající stromy "falling trees"

stoupající voda "rising water"

stoupající vody "rising waters"

The pattern of how to create these ending is like this:

The *root of an imperfective verb* + *oucí,ící*, or *jící* + *noun* in third singular or third plural form.

Stoupat = *stoupající řeka* "rise" = "rising river"

Padat = *padající strom* "fall" = "falling tree"

Pršet = *pršící mračna* "rain" = "raining clouds"

Hřmít = *hřmící nebe* "thunder" = "thundering sky"

Třást se = *třesoucí se země* "shake" = "shaking ground"

Blýskat se = *blýskající obloha* "light" = "lightning skies"

It is important to remember, however, that the English present continuous tense using "ing" corresponds to the Czech simple present tense of imperfective verbs.

Let's have a look at another imperfective verb from the conversation about weather and how this verb is used in the present tense. The verb *hrozit* "to threaten" in the sentence *hrozí povodně* "there is a threat of floods" is an imperfective verb.

To create the present tense of imperfective verbs, you simply have to conjugate the imperfective verbs the same way as in the present tense. For example:

hrozit ("to threaten")

Singular

Czech	"English"
(já) hrozím	"I threaten"
(ty) hrozíš	"you threaten"
(on, ona, ono) hrozí	"he/she/it threatens"

Plural

Czech	"English"
(my) hrozíme	"we threaten"
(vy) hrozíte	"you threaten"
(oni, ony)* hrozí	"they threaten"

* *oni* refers to the masculine gender or a mixed group, whilst *ony* refers only to the feminine gender.

2. The Czech particle *at* ("may") expressing wishes, instructions or warnings

In Czech there are many words referred to as particles (*částice*). They usually stand at the beginning of an independent sentence and they indicate what type of sentence it is, whether a question, order, exclamation, a wish, an instruction or warning, etc. They also indicate various positions of the speaker toward the content of the sentence. Particles do not connect sentences like conjunctions and must therefore be dealt with as a separate group.

Examples of particles:

Ať se nikdo neutopí! "May nobody drown!"

Jestlipak to poznáš? "Will you/ I wonder if you recognise this?"

Což mi připomíná... "Speaking of which...."

The particle *ať* expresses either a wish, just like in the sentence ***Ať se nikdo neutopí!*** "May nobody drown," or a warning or instructions. For example, ***Ať sem nikdo nechodí!*** "Make sure nobody comes here!" or just "May nobody come here!"

Other possible sentences with *ať*

Ať se třeba zblázní. "He may get mad (I don't care.)"

Ať mi dá pokoj! "I wish he'd leave me alone!" or "Tell him/her to leave me alone!"

Ať si dá pozor! "He/she should be careful!" or "Tell him/her to be careful!"

Ať ti štěstí přeje. "May you have good luck." or "I wish you good luck."

Ať nepadneš! "Make sure not to fall off."

3.Weather nouns

Czech	English
<i>jasno</i>	"bright and clear"
<i>déšť</i>	"rain"
<i>bouřka</i>	"thunderstorm"
<i>liják</i>	"downpour"
<i>mrholení</i>	"drizzle"
<i>slejšák</i>	"heavy rain"
<i>poprchávání</i>	"light rain"
<i>sprcha</i>	"shower"
<i>sníh</i>	"snow"
<i>vánice</i>	"heavy snow"
<i>sněhová bouře</i>	"blizzard"
<i>mrak</i>	"cloud"
<i>zataženo</i>	"slightly overcast"
<i>tmavá obloha</i>	"dull sky"
<i>dešťové mraky</i>	"rain clouds"

Examples from the Dialogue

V některých městech už probíhá evakuace lidí.

"In some cities people are already being evacuated. "

No nazdar. Tak to nás asi zaplaví v centru města.

"Blimey. So we might get flooded in the city centre."

Sample Sentences

Silný vítr poráží stromy u silnice.

"Strong winds caused trees by the road to collapse. "

Do města se žene tajfun.

"A typhoon is approaching our city. "

Prudké deště způsobují sesuv půdy.

"Torrential rains are causing landslides."

CULTURAL INSIGHT

Weather in the Czech Republic

The Czech Republic has a mild climate and changeable weather with four seasons: winter, spring, summer and autumn. Spring time usually starts from late April and the summer season from July. Summer lasts for about two months. Even in summer, the northern regions with mountains tend to be colder than the south of the Czech Republic. On average, the temperature in winter is between -1 to -5 degrees celsius, but lower in the mountains where snow can reach up to one meter high. However, winters are very changeable and while one year winter may be quite cold, the next year it might turn mild. Summers, on the other hand are relatively warm and temperatures can reach 30 degrees or more, especially in cities with dense housing. It is quite common for summers to experience sudden storms that usually come after several days of heat. When the rain and storms come, the temperature drops by about 10 degrees. It is also not unusual to have a rise in water levels or floods after strong rains. One of the most catastrophic floods recorded in the history of the Czech Republic was in 2002 where the cost of the damage, including the entire flooded Prague Metro system, was around 73 billion Czech Koruna.

Useful expression:

Prudké dešťové srážky.

"Torrential rainfalls. "

LESSON NOTES

Beginner S1 #7

What Will You Do During Your Winter Vacation in the Czech Republic?

CONTENTS

- 2 Czech
- 2 English
- 3 Vocabulary
- 4 Sample Sentences
- 4 Vocabulary Phrase Usage
- 6 Grammar
- 12 Cultural Insight

7

CZECH

1. Matěj: Co budete dělat na Nový rok?
2. Jitka: No, asi budeme doma, i když děti chtějí na lyže.
3. Matěj: Tak jedte někam na horskou chatu. Vy budete odpočívat vevnitř a děti budou lyžovat.
4. Jitka: No, jo, a co když nebude sníh? Ještě nepadá ani vločka.
5. Matěj: Na chatě se dá dělat spoustu jiných věcí. Budou tam lidi a další děti.
6. Jitka: No to je pravda. Děti se zabaví společně.
7. Matěj: Ještě jsou volná místa, ale musíte rychle rezervovat.
8. Jitka: Řeknu teda manželovi, musíme si pospíšit. A ještě přehodit zimní pneumatiky na autě!
9. Matěj: S tím vám můžu pomoci.
10. Jitka: To budu moc ráda. Děkuju.
11. Matěj: Tak si to užijte!

ENGLISH

1. Matěj: What will you be doing for New Year's?
2. Jitka: Well, I guess we'll be at home, but the children want to go skiing.

CONT'D OVER

3. Matěj: You can go to a mountain chalet. You can relax inside while the children are skiing.
4. Jitka: Well, I know, but what if there's no snow? There's not a snowflake falling even now.
5. Matěj: You can do many things in a chalet. There will be other people and children.
6. Jitka: That's true. The children will have fun together.
7. Matěj: There are still rooms available, but you need to book soon.
8. Jitka: Alright, I'll tell my husband. We have to hurry. And swap the winter tires on our car!
9. Matěj: I can help you with that.
10. Jitka: That would be great. Thank you.
11. Matěj: Enjoy your time!

VOCABULARY

Czech	English	Class
dělat	to do	verb, imperfective verb
být	to be	verb, imperfective verb
jet	to go (by means of transport)	imperfective verb
odpočívat	to rest	imperfective verb
chata	chalet, cottage	noun
zabavit se	to entertain (oneself)	perfective verb

rezervovat	to book, to reserve	imperfective and perfective verb
pospíšet si	to hurry up	verb, perfective verb
užít si	to enjoy (something)	perfective verb

SAMPLE SENTENCES

Dělám užitečnou věc. "I'm doing a useful thing."	Jsem nerozhodný. "I'm indecisive."
Musím být v práci v osm hodin. "I need to be at work at eight o'clock."	Chci být doma. "I want to be at home."
Být muž. "To be a man."	Jedu do města. "I'm going downtown."
Odpočívat po dlouhém dni. "Having a rest after a long day."	Mají chatu na horách. "They have a chalet in the mountains."
Na chvíli se nějak zabav. "Entertain yourself somehow for a minute."	Rezervovat místenku v autobuse. "Reserving a seat on the bus."
Musím si pospíšet než zavřou. "I have to hurry up before they close."	Nepospíšel si a přišel pozdě. "He didn't hurry up and arrived late."
Užijte si víkend! "Enjoy your weekend!"	

VOCABULARY PHRASE USAGE

někam jet

"to go somewhere"

This is a phrase containing an adverb, *někam* meaning "somewhere, someplace, anywhere, anyplace" and an imperfective verb, *jet*, meaning "to go, to drive, to ride."

When used in terms of getting a ride it's *někam jet autobusem* "to go somewhere by bus," in terms of travelling, *někam jet na výlet*, "to go somewhere on a trip" or *někam jet na dovolenou* "to go somewhere on holidays," and in terms of distance, *jet někam daleko*, "to go somewhere far."

For example:

1. *Někam jet lodí.*

"To go somewhere by boat."

dá se dělat

"It's possible to do"

This is a phrase containing *dá se*, which means "it is possible" (this cannot be separated from the reflexive *se* meaning "self"). The verb *dělat* is "to do" in its infinitive form.

This phrase is used when we want to express that something can be done or when questioning if something can be done. For example, *Dá se dělat spousta věcí* "It is possible to do many things," *Co všechno se dá dělat venku*, "All the things that can be done outside," In questions, it can be *Dá se něco dělat?* "Is it possible to do something?", or *Co se dá dělat!* "What can we do?!"

There is also a very frequently used phrase that uses the negative form of *dá* -> *nedá* ("cannot be done") to say that something can't be done or helped, *To se nedá nic dělat*, "It can't be helped."

For example:

1. *Tohle se tu nedá dělat.*

"This can't be done here. "

užijte si to!

"have a good time!"

This is a phrase wishing somebody to have a good time. *Užijte si* is an imperative form of the imperfective verb *užít si* "to have fun." *Si* is the reflexive pronoun

meaning "oneself" and *to* simply means "it/ that" in English. The literal translation is "enjoy yourselves it/that."

This is used in many different situations when people are leaving to go somewhere for holidays, nice evening, seeing friends, friendly sports match, walk outside, etc. The verb *užijte* is in plural form (also used as formal speech to one individual).

For example:

1. *Užijte si to u babičky!*

"Have a good time at grandma's!"

GRAMMAR

The Focus Of This Lesson Is Understanding Noun Declensions and Their Usage.

Co budete dělat na Nový rok?

"What will you do for New Year's?"

1.Czech Nouns

In Czech nouns are divided into three genders, masculine, feminine, and neuter. This division is important because nouns change their endings when declined according to "declension cases" (*pády*), of which there are seven. In this lesson we will explain how to distinguish the gender of nouns by their ending and how many declensions there are.

Below you will find a table that will help you to determine the gender of Czech nouns.

Masculine nouns end in:	Feminine nouns end in:	Neuter nouns end in:
------------------------------------	-----------------------------------	-----------------------------

a consonant:

hrad "castle"
stůl "table"
vlak "train"
čaj "tea"

the vowel -a:

fotbalista "footballer",
saxofonista
"saxophonist"
pianista "pianist"

Nouns for male person are usually all masculine:

učitel "teacher"
kuchař "chef"
profesor "professor"

the vowel -a, e:

voda "water"
bota "shoe"
lekce "lesson"
krize "crisis"

the vowel -í,ě:

paní "misses"
hospodyně "housewife"
kolegyně "colleague"

the suffix -ost "ness"

radost "happiness"
velikost "vastness"

ambivalent consonants:

píseň "song"
tramvaj "tram"

Nouns for female person are usually feminine:

učitelka "teacher"
maminka "mom"

the vowel -o, í

město "town"
těsto "dough"
kolo "bicycle"
stavení "building"
náměstí "square"
lešení "scaffolding"

the vowel -e:

pole "field"
moře "sea"
slunce "sun"

the syllable -um:

muzeum "museum"
gymnázium "grammar school"
koloseum "colosseum"

Nouns for young animals are mostly neuter:

kotě "kitten"
kuře "chicken"
kůzle "kid"

Nouns are also divided into **hard** and **soft** types, each of them following their own pattern of declension according to an adopted noun model. The soft nouns share similarities in the pattern of declension.

Masculine nouns are further divided into **animate** (living) and **inanimate** (non living) nouns.

Hard and soft types nouns are recognised by their endings, either in a vowel or in a consonant.

Hard consonants: *g, h, ch, k, r, d, t, n*, plus ambivalent consonants *b, l, m, p, v, s, z* and occasionally *c*.

Soft consonants: *ž, š, č, ř, d', t', ň*, and also *c, j*.

Hard type masculine nouns

These follow the pattern of the adopted/ model nouns *Pán* ("gentleman," "master"), *Předseda* ("chairman"), and *Hrad* ("castle").

Masculine hard nouns	adopted noun	noun endings
Masculine Animate (living)	<i>Pán</i> "gentleman, master" (genitive - <i>pána</i>)	hard and ambivalent consonants, sometimes , -o (i.e. names, Ivo , Vlado)
	<i>Předseda</i> "chairman" (genitive - <i>předsedy</i>)	nouns ending in , -a (<i>hokejista</i> "ice-hockey player")
Masculine Inanimate (non liv.)	<i>Hrad</i> "castle" (genitive - <i>hradu</i>)	hard/ambivalent consonants (vkład/u "deposit," kulich/u "beanie hat," dech/u "breath")

Soft type masculine nouns

These follow the pattern of the adopted nouns *Muž* ("man"), *Soudce* ("judge"), and *Stroj* ("machine").

Masculine soft nouns	adopted noun	noun endings
Masculine Animate (living)	<i>Muž</i> "man" (genitive <i>muž/e</i>)	soft consonants (řidič/e "driver," novinář/e "journalist," prodavač/e "shop assistant")
	<i>Soudce</i> "judge" (genitive <i>soudc/e</i>)	-e (vůdce/e "leader", správce/e "caretaker")
Masculine Inanimate (non liv.)	<i>Stroj</i> "machine" (genitive <i>stroj/e</i>)	soft consonants, sometimes ambivalent consonants (nůž/e "knife," koš/e "bin," ohně/ě "fire")

Hard type feminine nouns

Not divided into animate and inanimate.

These follow the pattern of the adopted noun *Žena* ("woman").

Feminine hard nouns	adopted noun	noun endings
	<i>Žena</i> "woman" (genitive <i>žen/y</i>)	usually in, -a (brána "gate," kobliha "doughnut," učitelka "teacher")

Soft type feminine nouns

Not divided into animate and inanimate.

Following the pattern of the adopted noun *Růže* ("rose"), *Píseň* ("song"), and *Kost* ("bone").

Feminine soft nouns	adopted noun	noun endings
	<i>Růže</i> "rose" (genitive <i>růž/e</i>)	,-e (also ,-ě) (krabice "box," země "earth")
	<i>Píseň</i> "song" (genitive <i>písně</i>)	soft consonants (pasáž/e "shopping arcade," holeň/ě "shin," tramvaj/e "tram," obec "municipality")
	<i>Kost</i> "bone" (genitive <i>kost/i</i>)	-suffix ,-ost (zlost/i "anger," zbabělost/i "cowardice," hodnost/i "rank") -other nouns recognised by its genitive form: řeč/i "speech", moc/i "power", věc/i "thing")

Neuter nouns

Neuter nouns are not divided into animate and inanimate.

Neuter nouns follow the pattern of the adopted nouns *Město* ("town"), *Moře* ("sea"), *Kuře* ("chicken"), and *Stavení* ("building").

Hard type Neuter nouns

Neuter hard nouns	adopted noun	noun endings
	<i>Město</i> "town" (genitive <i>měst/a</i>)	-o (kolo "bicycle," víčko "lid," okno "window")

Soft type neuter nouns

Neuter soft nouns	adopted noun	noun endings
	<i>Moře</i> "sea" (genitive <i>moř/e</i>)	-e , - iště (pole "field," shodiště "stairway," hřiště "play ground")
	<i>Kuře</i> "chicken" (genitive <i>kuře/te</i>)	young animal nouns (tele/te "calf," sele/te "piglet," morče/te "guinea pig")
		some other ending in , -e (děvče/te "girl/gal," rajče/te "tomato")
	<i>Stavení</i> "building" (genitive <i>staven/í</i>)	-í (vzdělání "education," spaní "sleep/ing," předměstí "suburbs." náměstí "town square," zjištění "identification/ discovery")

In terms of declension and its seven cases, the genitive form is the second case of out of seven and is connected with the preposition, *bez* "without." In order to recognise which adopted/model noun to use, Czech native speakers ask the question "without what?"

I.e. *žena bez ženy* ("woman without woman"), *růže bez růže* ("rose without rose"), *pán bez pána* ("master without master"), *muž bez muže* ("man without man"), *hrad bez hradu* ("castle without castle"), *město bez města* ("town without town"), etc.

Let's see some sentences that will be useful when discussing plans and where you can see the usage of some of these nouns. The nouns used here are selected nouns from the lesson 7 dialogue that are subject to seven cases of declension in each sentence, but our focus here recognizing the nouns and not each individual declension case. Those will be dealt with in lesson 8.

Masculine hard nouns

inanimate **rok** "year"

animate **manžel** "husband"

- *Co budete dělat na Nový rok?(4. accusative)*

"What will you be doing for New Year's?"

Rok is a masculine inanimate hard type noun and because it ends by an ambivalent consonant *k* and because in its genitive form, *rok* becomes *roku*. Therefore, the declension of *rok* follows the pattern of adopted/model noun **hrad**.

- *Řeknu teda manželovi. (3. dative)*

"All right, I'll tell my husband."

Manžel is a masculine hard type noun ending with the ambivalent consonant *l*, but because it's an animate (living) noun and its genitive form is *manžela*, this noun follows the adopted/model noun **pán**.

Feminine hard nouns

chata

i.e.

- *Na chatě se dá dělat spousta jiných věcí. (6.locative)*

"One can do many things in a chalet."

Chata is a feminine hard type noun because it ends with a vowel *-a* and its genitive form is *chaty*. Therefore, the noun follows the adopted/model noun **žena**.

Feminine soft nouns

věc

i.e.

- *Na chatě se dá dělat spousta jiných věcí. (2. genitive)*

"One can do many **things** in a chalet."

Věc is a feminine soft noun because it ends with a soft consonant c and its genitive form is *věcí*. Therefore the noun follows the adopted/model noun **kost**. Please note the noun in the sentence is in its plural form, thus also has to follow the plural declension pattern.

Neuter hard nouns

auto

i.e.

● *A ještě přehodit zimní pneumatiky na **autě**.* (6.locative)

"And swap the winter tires on our **car**."

Auto is a neuter hard type noun because it ends with a vowel ,-o and its genitive form is *auta*. Therefore the noun follows the adopted/model noun **město**.

Examples from the Dialogue

Na chatě se dá dělat spoustu jiných věcí. Budou tam lidi a další děti.

"You can do many things in a chalet. There will be other people and children."

No, jo, a co když nebude sníh? Ještě nepadá ani vločka.

"Well, I know, but what if there's no snow? There's not a snowflake falling even now. "

Sample Sentences

Budeme slavit Nový rok v ulicích Prahy.

"We'll be celebrating New Year's eve in the streets of Prague."

Ve městě bude ohňostroj

"There'll be fireworks in town."

Budu trávit čas u známých na chatě.

"I'll be spending time at my friends' chalet. "

CULTURAL INSIGHT

New Year's Eve

Especially in big cities and towns, it is quite common to celebrate New Year's Eve in the streets. Many Czech towns organise some kind of entertainment for the citizens, and also fireworks at midnight. In Prague one can see a stage in the city centre with live music, various entertainment, stalls with refreshments and other products for sale. During the day, there is usually a big market surrounding the area. Small towns tend to have less fireworks than Prague. There are also many people who decide to spend New Year's at home and they watch the happenings in the streets on their TV screen. Families have traditional snacks at home, often home-made, and they wish each other a wonderful new year at midnight. Wishes are accompanied by a beverage, alcoholic or non-alcoholic. Many Czech people like to spend New Year's Eve in the mountains in their own cottage or a rented cottage. There are chances of snow and possibility to ski during the day. Night skiing is also popular. This is very common and it's fun for people to gather together or to meet new people in a relaxing atmosphere in the mountains.

Useful expression:

Všechno nejlepší k novému roku!

"All the best to the new year! "

LESSON NOTES

Beginner S1 #8

These Czech Boots Were Made for Walking!

CONTENTS

2	Czech
2	English
3	Vocabulary
4	Sample Sentences
4	Vocabulary Phrase Usage
6	Grammar
15	Cultural Insight

8

CZECH

1. Matěj: Dobrý den. Chtěl bych si koupit nějaké boty do náročného terénu.
2. Helena: Myslíte něco jako pohorky?
3. Matěj: Ano, nějaké voděodolné a kožené.
4. Helena: A jakou máte velikost?
5. Matěj: Devět.
6. Helena: Tady máme tyhle kotníkové v tmavě modré barvě nebo v černé.
7. Matěj: Děkuji. Zkusím si ty modré.
8. Helena: Prosím, posad'te se. Tady je pravá bota.
9. Matěj: Děkuju. Můžete mi dát i tu levou? Rád bych se v nich prošel.
10. Helena: Je to pravá kůže, jsou velmi kvalitní. Nepromokavé a zateplené.
11. Matěj: Ano. Zdají se být i pohodlné. Vezmu si je.
12. Helena: Jistě, vezmu vám je k pokladně.

ENGLISH

1. Matěj: Hello. I'd like to buy some outdoor boots.

CONT'D OVER

2. Helena: Do you mean something like trekking boots?
3. Matěj: Yes, also water-resistant and made from leather.
4. Helena: And what's your size?
5. Matěj: Nine.
6. Helena: We have these ankle-high ones in dark blue or black.
7. Matěj: Thank you. I'll try the blue ones.
8. Helena: Please sit down. Here's the right boot.
9. Matěj: Thank you. Could you give me the left one too? I'd like to walk in them.
10. Helena: They're made from real leather, very good quality. They're water-resistant and insulated.
11. Matěj: Yes, they seem comfortable, too. I'll take them.
12. Helena: Sure, I'll take them to the counter for you.

VOCABULARY

Czech	English	Class
bota	shoe	noun
voděodolný	water-resistant	adjective
kožený	made of leather	adjective
velikost	size	noun
tyhle	these	pronoun

zkusit si	to try (something on)	perfective verb
pravý	right	adjective
levý	left	adjective
projít se	to take a stroll	perfective verb
kvalitní	of fine quality	adjective

SAMPLE SENTENCES

<p>Dívka si obouvá botu.</p> <p>"A girl is putting on her shoe."</p>	<p>Dívka si obouvá botu.</p> <p>The girl is putting on her shoe.</p>
<p>Koupuju si voděodolný obal na mobil.</p> <p>"I'm buying a water-resistant cover for my mobile."</p>	<p>Máme doma koženou sedačku v obýváku.</p> <p>"In the living room we have a leather sofa."</p>
<p>Jaká je tohle velikost?</p> <p>"What size is this?"</p>	<p>Při internetovém prodeji je obtížné správně určit velikost oblečení.</p> <p>"It is difficult to figure out the size of the clothes sold on the Internet."</p>
<p>Tyhle boty jsou pohodlné.</p> <p>"These shoes are comfortable."</p>	<p>Zkusila si také slaměný klobouk.</p> <p>"She also tried on a straw hat."</p>
<p>Nemůžu najít pravou botu.</p> <p>"I can't find my right shoe."</p>	<p>Bolí mě levá noha.</p> <p>"My left foot hurts."</p>
<p>Nejdřív se trochu projdi.</p> <p>"First go for a stroll."</p>	<p>Tyhle výrobky se zdají dost kvalitní.</p> <p>"These products seem to be of good quality."</p>

VOCABULARY PHRASE USAGE

velikost

"size"

Velikost is a feminine noun. The word has the following meanings depending on the context of a sentence: "size," "height," "measurement," "greatness," "amount," "intensity."

This noun is often used together with imperfective verb *mít*, "to have." I.e. *Já mám velikost M*, literally "I have size M," ("I'm a medium") or somebody/something *má velikost M* "has size M." The word *velikost* is most often used with clothing sizes, shoes, or other body measurements, such as head size. But it is also not unusual to use *velikost* in terms of height, i.e. *velikost postavy*, meaning the height and width of a body, or "stature." *Velikost-* can also refer to the vastness/largeness of an area, i.e. *velikost prostoru* "the size/largeness of an area," or refers to intensity of a force, i.e. *velikost síly* "the intensity of a force," or *velikost i* terms of capacity, i.e. *velikost DVD*, "the size of a DVD" meaning the data capacity of a DVD.

For example:

1. *Tenhle soubor má velikost 12GB (dvanáct gigabajtů).*

"This file is 12 GB (twelve gigabytes)."

zkusit si

"to try on"

Zkusit means "to try" and *si* is the dative form of the reflexive pronoun "oneself." The literal translation is "to try something (for/to oneself, on oneself)."

When talking about clothes, *zkusit si* means to "try some clothes on," i.e. *zkusit si kalhoty*, "to try on trousers," *zkusit si klobouk*, "to try on a hat." Because we try clothes on ourselves, or a person tries something on himself/herself etc., the reflexive pronoun *si* "on oneself/ for oneself" is indispensable here. This phrase can also be used in terms of trying/attempting something for the first time, i.e. *zkusit si jízdu na koni* "to try (for oneself) a horseback ride," *zkusit si zahrát na saxofon* "to try (for oneself) to play saxophone." In casual English, when trying something for the first time, this phrase is translated as "to have a go at something." When talking about trying something in practice, we use this phrase as follows: *zkusit si v praxi* "to try (for oneself) in practice," or in other words "to get one's hands on something."

For example:

1. *Můžu si zkusit ty kalhoty?*

"Can I try on these trousers?"

projít se

"to take a walk/ stroll"

Projít means "take a walk, go for a stroll," and *se* is the accusative form of reflexive pronoun "oneself."

Because of the reflexive pronoun *se*, this phrase has the meaning of going for a stroll, taking a walk (oneself, himself, herself, themselves etc.), for example, *Projít se jejich zahradou*, "to take a stroll through their garden." *Projít se* can also be used when trying on shoes. In such a case, *projít se v botech*, "to take a walk in the shoes," refers to a short walk to test how the new shoes feel.

For example:

1. *Projdi se trochu v těch botech.*

"Take a little stroll in these shoes. "

GRAMMAR

The Focus Of This Lesson Is Understanding Declension Cases and their Usage.

Ano, nějaké voděodolné a kožené.

"Yes, also water-resistant and made from leather."

Understanding declension cases and their usage

Once you know the gender of a particular noun, you can start declining it. There are seven different cases in the Czech language starting from 1. *nominative*, 2. *genitive*, 3. *dative*, 4. *accusative*, 5. *vocative*, 6. *locative*, and 7. *instrumental*. Declension applies to singular form of nouns as well the plural form of nouns. Each of these cases has a specific role to play and we use them to express the following meanings:

1. Nominative

The nominative case represents the most basic form of a noun, and it is the form

that is always presented in the dictionary. The nominative case expresses the subject. The question to be asked in this case is *kdo, co* "who, what."

For Example:

1. *Petra zpívá.* "Petra sings" or "Petra is singing."
2. *Petr zpívá.* "Petr sings" or "Petr is singing."
3. *Ten dům je velký.* "The house is big."
4. *Ta zahrada je velká.* "The garden is big."

Question:

Who sings/ or Who is singing? = Petra (female), Petr (male)

What is big? = the house (masculine), the garden (feminine)

2. Genitive

Czech also frequently uses the genitive case, which can be compared to the English "of." This case is frequently connected with other prepositions such as, *do* "in/ into," *z/ ze* "out of," *od* "from" (a person), *bez* "without." The question to be asked here is "of who/ whose" or "into what," "from what/ where," "from who/ what," "without who/ what."

For Example:

1. *Kabelka Petry.* "Petra's handbag."
2. *Razítko úřadu.* "A stamp of the office."
3. *Vyšla ze školy.* "She came out of school."
4. *Dopis od babičky.* "A letter from grandma."
5. *Přijít bez tašky.* "To come without a bag."
6. *Přišel bez ženy.* "He came without his wife."
7. *Šel do domu.* "He went into a house."

Question:

The handbag of who? = Petra

The stamp of what? = of the school

She came out from where? = out of school

A letter from who? = from grandma

To come without what? = without a bag

He came without who? = without his wife

He went into what? = into a house

Furthermore, the genitive case is used for:

Possessiveness:

For example:

1. *bota Tomáše*. "Tom's shoe."

2. *dítě Aleny*. "Alena's child."

Measurements:

For example:

1. *Dvě kila brambor*. "Two kilos of potatoes."

2. *Hromada písku*. "A heap of sand."

3. *Hodně mléka*. "A lot of milk."

Dates and time, such as date of birth, schedule:

For example:

1. *Narodil se 30. (třicátého) srpna*. "He was born on the 30th (thirtieth) of August."

2. *Vracím se 7. (sedmého) září*. "I'm coming back on the 7th (seventh) of September."

Location:

Used with the preposition *u*, "by."

For example:

1. *Hotel je na pláži u moře*. "The hotel is on the beach by the sea."

2. *Sejdeme se u bazénu.* "Let's meet by the pool."

The genitive case follows these words:

bez "without," *během* "during," *blízko* "near," *do* "into," *kolem* "around," *kromě* "except," *místo* "instead," *od* "from," *podle* "by, according," *podél* "along," *u* "by, at," *uprostřed* "in the middle," *vedle* "next to," *z* "from," *za* "instead, on behalf."

3. Dative

The dative case can be compared to the English "to/ for" and the question to be asked is "to who/ whom" or "for whom." This case expresses an indirect object of a sentence and often follows prepositions, such as *k/ ke* "to/ toward."

For Example:

1. *Prodal mu auto.* "He sold a car to him."
2. *Napsali mě dopis.* "They wrote a letter to me."
3. *Pohlednice babičce.* "A postcard for grandma."
4. *Jdu ke kamarádce.* "I'm going to my (female) friend."

Question:

To whom did he sell a car? = to him

To whom did they write a letter? = to me

A postcard for who? = for grandma

I'm going to who? = to my (female) friend

The dative case also follows these words:

díky "thanks to," *k* "to, toward," *kvůli* "because of, due to," *naproti* "opposite," *proti* "against, opposite," *vzhledem k* "regarding," *směrem k* "in the direction of."

4. Accusative

The accusative case is used to express the direct object of the verb. It is the most frequently used case and is also often connected with certain prepositions, such as - *pro* "for," and the question to be asked is "who" or "what" or with preposition "for whom" or "for what." It has two main functions in a sentence.

We use it as a direct object after transitive verbs:

For example:

1. *Hledám Petru.* "I am looking for Petra."
2. *Vidím dům.* "I can see a house."

Question:

Who am I looking for? = for Petra

What am I seeing? = a house.

The accusative is the implied case after most verbs:

For example:

1. *Petra pije čaj.* "Petra drinks tea."

Question:

What does Petra drink? = tea

The accusative case also follows after these prepositions:

mezi "between," *na* "at," *nad* "above," *o* "over," *pod* "under," *pro* "for," *před* "ahead of," *přes* "across," *skrz* "throughout," *za* "behind."

5. Vocative

The vocative case is used for addressing people and animals. It appears in:

Greetings and farewells:

For example:

1. *Dobré ráno, **Josefe**.* "Good morning, Josef."
2. *Tak čau, **Martine**.* "Bye then, Martin."
3. ***Petro!** Pojd' sem!* "Petra! Come here!"

In plural form, such as the surname of a family, the form remains in its original form without changing. I.e. *Novákovi* (the Novaks, the family of Novak).

*Dobré ráno, **Novákovi**.* "Good morning, Novaks."

Na shledanou, **Novákovi**. "Good bye, Novaks."

6. Locative

The locative case expresses a location and it is the only case that always has a preposition. The declension is applied after the preposition. Its main role is to denote location and we use it with the prepositions *v/ve* "in," *na* "on, at, for," *o* "about," *po* "on/ across," *při* "by,at, near, close to."

1. *Jsem v kanceláři*. "I am **in the office**."
2. *Knížka je na stole*. "The book is **on the table**."
3. *Jsou na koncertě*. "They are **at a concert**."
4. *Často přemýšlím o životě*. "I often think **about life**"
5. *Plaví se po moři*. "They are sailing **on/ across the sea**."
6. *Stojím při tobě*. "I stand **by you**."
7. *Být na obědě*. "We are **having lunch**." (Literally "**We are at lunch**.")

A.

The preposition *v/ve* is used in the same way as the English "in." It applies mainly to the position of being inside somewhere, such as at a pub, home, elevator, shop, etc., as well as talking about villages, towns, countries, (but NOT islands). *V domě* "in the house", *v krámě* "in the shop, *ve výtahu* "in the elevator," etc.

B.

The preposition *na*, "at/ on." Usually where English uses the preposition "at," the Czech language uses the preposition *na*. *Na* expresses a position on something.

1)

The preposition *na* refers to open spaces and surfaces, such as streets, floors, tables, bridges, balconies, islands, towers, etc. For example, *Na ulici* "in the street," *na podlaze* "on the floor," *na balkóně* "on the balcony," *na mostě* "on the bridge" etc.

2)

Na is also used with actions and activities such as exhibitions, concerts open pools (*koupaliště*), discos, demonstrations, and also expresses being at lunch, dinner, breakfast, etc. For example, *na demonstraci* "at a demonstration," *na výstavě* "at an

exhibition," *na koupališti* "at an open swimming pool," *na obědě* "having lunch," etc.

3)

Another use of the preposition *na* is when we talk about visiting certain public spaces or institutions, such as squares, embassies, town halls, courts, post offices, bureaus, railway stations, bus stations, etc.

I.e. *Na náměstí* "at the (town) square," *na poště* "at the post office," *na nádraží* "at the railway station," *na úřadě* "at a bureau," etc.

C.

A)

The preposition **po** "across, around" is used to express travelling or walking around/ across a place. For example, "walking across the city" *chodit po městě*, or "sail on the sea" *plout po moři*, "travel the world" *jezdit po světě*, "walk the street" *jít po silnici*.

B)

Preposition **po** + *noun in locative case* is also used in terms of communication, such as telephone or internet. In this case, the meaning is "over" or "on". I.e. *Mluvil jsem s ním po telefonu* "I spoke with him over the phone," *šíří se to po internetu* "it's being spread over/ on the Internet."

7. Instrumental

The instrumental case, you'll be happy to hear, is one of the easiest cases to master in the Czech language. We use it more often than the dative or vocative, but less than the other four. The instrumental means "by/ with," expressing the means by or through which an action is carried out. Usually doing something by an instrument etc. The instrumental case also often follows the preposition *s/ se* "with" or other prepositions expressing relative location, such as *za* "behind," *před* "in front of." The instrumental case has the following usages:

It has the function of an indirect object when expressing the usage of tools.

For example:

1. *Polévku jíme lžící.* "We eat soup **with a spoon.**"
2. *Čistím boty kartáčem.* "I clean shoes **with a brush.**"
3. *Zaplatím kartou.* "I'll pay **by card.**"

4. *Mýt se vodou.* "To wash oneself **with water.**"

We use it to express that the subject of a sentence or phrase is something.

Simply remember that the instrumental case tells you who is who and what is what.

For example:

1. *Adéla bude **doktorkou.*** "Adel will become a doctor."

2. *(On) se vyučí se **zahradníkem.*** "He'll train to be a gardener."

3. *Stala se (ona) jeho **miláčkem.*** "She became his favorite."

Use of the instrumental with prepositions of relative location:

Used with the prepositions *mezi* "between," *nad* "above, over," *pod* "under," *před* "in front of," *s/se* "with," *za* "to, beyond."

For example:

1. *Parkuju auto **před domem.*** "I'm parking **in front of the house.**"

2. *Bydlíme **mezi poštou a lékárnou.*** "We live **between the post office and pharmacy.**"

3. *Stojí hned **za dveřmi.*** "He's standing right **behind the door.**"

4. *Půjdeme **za babičkou.*** "We'll go **to grandma's.**"

5. *Musíš jít až **za tu budovu.*** "You must go **beyond the building.**"

6. *Jdu tam **s Honzou.*** "I'm going there **with Honza.**"

7. *Jdu **se svojí maminkou.*** "I'm going **with my mum.**"

2. Declension of feminine nouns:

In the conversation from lesson 8, Matěj wants to buy shoes in a shoe shop.

"Shoe" and "shoes" are feminine nouns in Czech.

Feminine nouns are divided into *hard* and *soft* nouns. Hard singular feminine nouns end with **-a**, and hard plural feminine nouns end with **-y**. In order to decline these nouns in Czech grammar, they follow adopted model nouns for each type.

Hard type

● Feminine nouns , -a (adopted model noun **žena/ ženy** "woman/ women") are nouns ending with -a, such as *řeka/y* "river/s," *brána/y* "gate/s," *lampa/y* "a lamp/s"

Soft type

● ending in , - e (adopted model noun **růže/ růže** "rose/roses"), these are nouns ending with , -e, such as *kůže* "skin," *lednice* "fridge," and *židle* "a chair."

● ending in a *soft consonant* (adopted model noun **píseň/písně** "song/songs") such as *kolej* "rail," *povodeň* "flood," and *věž* "tower."

Example from the lesson 8 dialogue:

Bota, ending with -a, is a hard type noun and follows the model noun *žena/ ženy* "woman/women."

Bota "shoe" is a singular noun.

Boty "shoes" is a plural noun.

Chtěl bych si koupit nějaké boty. "I'd like to buy some shoes."

In this sentence the declension of the plural noun *boty* is the 4th accusative case.

I want to buy what? = *boty*.

Declension table with the model noun **žena** "woman/ wife"

cases	singular	plural
1.nom.	<i>žena</i>	<i>ženy</i>
2.gen.	<i>(bez) ženy</i>	<i>(bez) žen</i>
3.dat.	<i>ženě</i>	<i>ženám</i>
4.acc.	<i>ženu</i>	<i>ženy</i>
5.voc.	<i>ženo!</i>	<i>ženy!</i>
6.loc.	<i>(o) ženě</i>	<i>(o) ženách</i>
7.inst.	<i>(s) ženou</i>	<i>(s) ženami/ ženama*</i>

Declension table with the feminine hard noun **bota/ boty** "shoe/ shoes"

cases	singular	plural
1.nom.	<i>bota</i>	<i>boty</i>
2.gen.	<i>boty</i>	<i>bot</i>
3.dat.	<i>botě</i>	<i>botám</i>
4.acc.	<i>botu</i>	<i>boty</i>
5.voc.	<i>boto!</i>	<i>boty!</i>
6.loc.	<i>(o) botě</i>	<i>(o) botách</i>
7.inst.	<i>(s) botou</i>	<i>(s) botami/ botama*</i>

* *ženama, botama* is a spoken form, whilst *ženami, botami* is the formal or written style.

Examples from the dialogue:

Děkuji. Zkusím si ty modré.

"Thank you. I'll try the blue ones. "

Ano. Zdají se být i pohodlné. Vezmu si je.

"Yes, they seem comfortable, too. I'll take them."

Sample Sentences

Vezmu si ty boty s nízkým podpatkem.

"I'll take the shoes with the low heel."

Chtěla bych si koupit semišové lodičky.

"I'd like to buy suede pumps. "

Pánské mokasíny budeme mít za týden.

"We'll have men's moccasins next week. "

CULTURAL INSIGHT

Czech People and Shoes

There is something about shoes in the Czech Republic. First of all, there is a tradition of making Czech shoes for Czech people. Second, Czech people prefer practicality over fashion, therefore high-heels and low quality shoes are generally not appreciated. Czechs like their shoes to be a good fit, comfortable, and practical, shoes that they can wear most of the time and that do not wear off too quickly. This trend is also very strong in cities where people have to walk a lot, often on cobblestones (small squared stones), which are part of a Czech tradition of paving streets, especially in historical and tourist cities. Shoes made in the Czech Republic have always been of good quality and they fit European or Czech feet very well. In the city of Zlín, there is the university of Tomáš Baťa where they teach shoe making. Baťa is a Czech shoe brand and a typical Baťa product is a shoe that does not completely follow the latest trend, but can be worn for many years. However, today, the company's headquarters are in Switzerland.

Recently a new trend of barefoot walking has emerged which comes from the idea that walking barefoot is good for people's health. Markets and investors are already adjusting to this new trend by making new type of shoes - shoes in which one feels barefoot. The durability of such products in the Czech market has been tested in Baťa's factory. There are volunteers who have created special paths for this activity, although there are not many yet. One is, for example, in Stare Hamry. http://www.stezka-grun.cz/osme_zast.html

Useful expression:

Zdravotní boty.

"Orthopedic shoes."

LESSON NOTES

Beginner S1 #9

Making Dinner Reservations in Czech

CONTENTS

- 2 Czech
- 2 English
- 3 Vocabulary
- 4 Sample Sentences
- 5 Vocabulary Phrase Usage
- 6 Grammar
- 10 Cultural Insight

9

CZECH

1. Matěj: Dobrý den, chtěl bych rezervovat stůl pro tři lidi.
2. Číšnice: Ano, jistě. A na který den?
3. Matěj: Na sobotu večer. Máte ještě volná místa?
4. Číšnice: Ano, máme. Ale už jen v nekuřáckém salonku.
5. Matěj: To mi zrovna vyhovuje. Nikdo z nás nekouří.
6. Číšnice: Dobře. Na kolik hodin byste chtěl tu rezervaci?
7. Matěj: Asi na 8 (osm) hodin.
8. Číšnice: Dobře.
9. Matěj: Ještě bych se chtěl zeptat, máte také vegetariánské menu?
10. Číšnice: V hlavním menu máme výběr několika vegetariánských jídel.
11. Matěj: To mi bude stačit. Děkuji.
12. Číšnice: Není zač. Také vám děkuji.

ENGLISH

1. Matěj: Hello. I'd like to reserve a table for three people.
2. Waitress: Yes, certainly. Which day?

CONT'D OVER

3. Matěj: Saturday evening. Do you still have available seats?
4. Waitress: Yes, we do, but only in the non-smoking room.
5. Matěj: That suits me just fine. None of us smoke.
6. Waitress: All right. And what time would you like the reservation for?
7. Matěj: About eight o'clock.
8. Waitress: Sure.
9. Matěj: Also, I'd like to ask, do you have a vegetarian menu?
10. Waitress: We have a choice of vegetarian dishes on the main menu.
11. Matěj: That will do for me. Thank you.
12. Waitress: You're welcome. Thank you too.

VOCABULARY

Czech	English	Class
pro	for	preposition
lidé	people	noun
který	which, what	pronoun
den	day	noun
večer	evening	noun
kolik	what, how many, how much	quantifier
nekuřácký	non-smoking	adjective

zeptat se	to ask, to enquire	perfective verb
výběr	choice, selection	noun
několik	several, some, few	quantifier

SAMPLE SENTENCES

<p>Pro muže. "For men."</p>	<p>Lidé se shromažďují v ulicích. "People are gathering in the streets."</p>
<p>Lidé z různých koutů světa mají rozdílnou víru a rozdílné zvyky. "People from different parts of the world have different beliefs and customs."</p>	<p>Lidé zdraví. The people are saying, "Hello."</p>
<p>Lidé jedou do Los Angeles. "They are going to Los Angeles."</p>	<p>Lidé si dávají jahody. The people are taking the strawberries.</p>
<p>Který den přijdeš? "Which day will you come?"</p>	<p>Dobrý den! "Good day!"</p>
<p>Dobrý večer! "Good evening!"</p>	<p>Tenisový kurt je otevřený i večer. "The tennis court is open in the evening, too."</p>
<p>Za teplých letních večerů hrajeme často karty. "We often play cards on a warm summer evening."</p>	<p>Stůl pro kolik osob? "A table for how many people?"</p>

<p>Prosím místnost pro nekuřáky.</p> <p>"A room for non-smokers, please."</p>	<p>Zeptám se obsluhy.</p> <p>"I'll ask the wait staff."</p>
<p>Není to moc dobrý výběr.</p> <p>"It's not a very good choice."</p>	<p>Zbývá jen několik minut.</p> <p>"Only a few minutes are left."</p>

VOCABULARY PHRASE USAGE

volný

"free, unreserved"

Volný is an adjective with many meanings, the basic ones being "free, independent, vacant, loose, unrestricted," etc. There are lots of possible translations of this word in English.

There are about eight different situations where the adjective **volný** can be used. Somebody can be **volný** when speaking about being free or independent. When talking about there being no restrictions, something or somebody can be **volný**, i.e. **volný přístup**, "unrestricted access," or **volný trh**, "free market." When we talk about time, **volný čas** is "free/leisure time," and **ve svém volném čase** is "in one's spare time." When we talk about a place that is vacant, free, or unoccupied, we can say **Je tu volné místo?**, "Is this seat free?" We can also use **volný** in terms of a free/borderless place or area, for example, **na volném moři** "in the open sea," or **ve volné přírodě** "in the wild, in the open." Also, access or a ticket can be **volný - volný vstup** "free admission," or **volná vstupenka** "complimentary ticket." When talking about clothes, we can use **volný oděv**, "loose/loose-fitting/baggy clothes."

For example:

1. *Na příští dětskou akci je volný vstup.*
"For the next children admission to the activity is free. "

vyhovovat

"to suit"

This is an imperfective verb with three main meanings: "to suit"/ "to be convenient, to oblige," "to meet"/ "to satisfy."

The most frequent use of this verb is when asking somebody if something is all

right for him/her, or if something suits their needs: *vyhovuje Vám to?* "Does it suit you?" or "Is this convenient for you?"

Another possible use is when talking about services, and **vyhovovat** to somebody refers to providing a service to somebody, like "to oblige, to accommodate," although the word **vyhovovat** is then replaced by-**vyhovět**. I.e. **Vyhovět zákazníkovi** "to oblige/ to cater to/ to accommodate customers' needs."

For example:

1. *Vyhovuje Vám odpolední čas?*
"Is that time in the afternoon suitable for you?"

výběr "choice, selection"

Výběr is a masculine noun. **Výběr** can either refer to a selection, choice, range, digest, compilation, or to withdrawal or collection of money.

This is used when talking about choices, as in **Výběr zboží**, "Selection of products," or **Byl to dobrý výběr!** "It was a good choice!", **Máme výběr mnoha barev** "We have a range of colors," It can also be used when speaking about a selection or something, or a compilation, as in **Čtenářův výběr** "Reader's digest," or **Výběr z nejlepší hudby** "A compilation of the best music." And lastly, **výběr** can be used in connection with money. **Výběr peněz** means "cash withdrawal," or depending on context, **výběr peněz** can also mean that money is collected from somebody, as in **Výběr peněžního příspěvku**, "A collection of monetary contribution."

For example:

1. *Byl to dobrý výběr!*
"It was a good choice!"

GRAMMAR

The Focus Of This Lesson Is Using Present Tense and Conditional Tense While Making a Phone Reservation for Dinner at a Restaurant.

Dobry den, chtěl bych rezervovat stůl pro tři lidi.
"Hello. I'd like to reserve a table for three people. "

The present tense in this lesson's conversation is mainly expressed through the verb **mít**, "to have." There are several sentences where **mít** is used in the

conjugated form according to person.

Máte ještě volná místa?

"Are there/ do you have seats still available?"

Máte vegetariánské menu?

"Is there/ do you have a vegetarian menu?"

Máme výběr několika jídel.

"There is/ we have a choice of several meals."

As you can see, the verb *mít* can have several translations in English. It is often translated as "to have" or "there is" or in a question as "is there?, are there?" When asking a question, the conjugated *mít* has to be at the beginning of the sentence without the personal pronoun.

How to conjugate *mít* "to have" in its present tense form:

Singular

(já) mám	"I have"
(ty) máš	"you have"
(on, ona, ono) má	"he, she, it has"

Plural

(my) máme	"we have"
(vy) máte	"you have"
(oni) mají	"they have"

When making a reservation at a restaurant or speaking to a stranger over the phone or in person, never forget to use formal speech, which is the second person (vy) plural form .

In case of **mít**, the formal conjugated form is *máte*.

Example sentences:

Máte volný stůl?

"Is there/ do you have a free table?"

Máte ještě místo?

"Is there/ do you still have available seats?"

Máte místo pro nekuřáky?

"Is there/ do you have a room for non-smokers?"

Máte polední menu?

"Do you have a lunch menu?"

Máte dnes otevřeno?

"Is it/ are you open today?"

1. Conditional tense *bych*

When making a reservation in Czech, you also need to use the conditional tense *bych*, which adds politeness to the speech. As we already said in lesson 5, *bych* is equivalent to the English conditional tense "would" (in other cases also "would do", "would make", etc). When making a reservation, it is often used in the following form:

male:

Já bych rád

"I would like"

Já bych chtěl

"I would like"

female:

Já bych ráda

"I would like"

Já bych chtěla

"I would like"

Rád or **ráda** is an adjective meaning "gladly, happy, pleased, with pleasure, etc", while **chtít** or **chtěl** means "want to"(wanted to). When we want to express that we would like something, both forms can be used. In this case, both sentences mean the same thing, which is "I would like to."

Czech people often use such sentences without the personal pronouns.

rád/ ráda bych

"I would like"

chtěl/ chtěla bych

"I would like"

Examples:

Rád bych rezervoval stůl pro dva.
"I would like to reserve a table for two."

Ráda bych rezervovala stůl pro čtyři.
"I would like to reserve a table for four."

Chtěl bych rezervovat stůl pro dva.
"I would like to reserve a table for two."

Chtěla bych rezervovat stůl pro čtyři.
"I would like to reserve a table for four."

Conjugation of *rád + by* "would like to"

Singular

<i>rád/ ráda bych</i>	"I would like" (male/ female)
<i>rád/ ráda bys</i>	"you would like" (male/ female)
<i>rád/ ráda by</i>	"he/ she would like"

Plural

<i>rádi bysme/ bychom*</i>	"we would like"
<i>rádi byste</i>	"you would like"
<i>rádi by</i>	"they would like"

Conjugation of *chtít + bych* conditional form:

Singular

<i>chtěl/ chtěla bych</i>	"I would like"
<i>chtěl bys</i>	"you would like"
<i>chtěl/chtěla/ chtělo by</i>	"he/she/ it would like"

Plural

<i>chtěli bysme/ bychom*</i>	"we would like"
<i>chtěli byste</i>	"you would like"

***bychom** is a formal term, used more in written rather than spoken form.

Example sentences:

Chtěl bych rezervaci na dnešní večer.

"I'd like a reservation for tonight."

Rád bych rezervoval stůl na dnes večer.

"I'd like to reserve a table for tonight."

Chtěli bysme stůl u okna.

"We'd like a table by the window."

Rádi bysme stůl u okna.

"We'd like a table by the window."

Chtěla bych rezervovat stůl pro pět lidí.

"I'd like to reserve a table for five people."

Examples from the Dialogue

Ano, jistě. A na který den?

"Yes, certainly. Which day?"

Ještě bych se chtěl zeptat, máte také vegetariánské menu?

"Also I'd like to ask, do you have a vegetarian menu?"

Sample Sentences

Ráda bych stůl pro pět lidí.

"I'd like a table for five people."

Mohli bychom rezervovat celý stůl?

"Could we reserve a whole table?"

Chtěl bych rezervovat místo u okna.

"I'd like to reserve a table by the window."

CULTURAL INSIGHT

Dining in the Czech Republic

Traditional Czech cuisine cannot exactly be called healthy. There are many heavy foods that may not be to everybody's liking, but if not eaten on a daily basis they are certainly worth trying for their special tastes. One traditional food item not found in many other countries are the many various types of dumplings Czech cuisine has to offer. They range from bread dumplings to potato dumplings or sweet dumplings filled with fruit. Nevertheless, over the past five years, there have been new trends entering the Czech restaurants in order to attract customers. These trends include providing food cooked from fresh domestic ingredients, exotic combinations and unusual preparations. After international cuisines entered the Czech market, such as Japanese, Mexican, and Vietnamese, the Czech restaurants are trying to gain customers through Slow Food (this particular food movement condemns fast-food culture and promotes organic domestic ingredients without using pre-packed food) or through Fusion Cuisine, which combines two or more traditional cuisines together and creates new, attractive looking and great tasting meals. Most common are combined Asian and Western/mainly European meals.

Typical Czech pubs have also been changing. Pubs used to be primarily a meeting point for men, especially during the sports World Cups when many male fans came to support their teams, to socialise over a pint of beer. Now many customers are also women. This phenomenon is due to modernisation, and pubs are now less smoky, and the facilities, such as toilets and general seating, are improving. Czech pubs also offer certain food specialities that cannot be found in other restaurants, and they tend to have good quality Czech beer.

Useful expression:

Tradiční česká hospoda.

"A traditional Czech pub. "

LESSON NOTES

Beginner S1 #10

Ordering a Delicious Czech Dish

CONTENTS

- 2 Czech
- 2 English
- 3 Vocabulary
- 4 Sample Sentences
- 5 Vocabulary Phrase Usage
- 6 Grammar
- 9 Cultural Insight

10

CZECH

1. Číšnice: Dobrý den. Co si dáte k jídlu?
2. Matěj: Dobrý den. Dal bych si tatarák. Jaké to je maso, vepřové nebo hovězí?
3. Číšnice: To je nasekané hovězí, ale přidáváme trochu sardelové pasty a kaviáru.
4. Matěj: Aha, kaviár nejím. Mohl bych si to dát bez kaviáru?
5. Číšnice: Ano, to není problém.
6. Matěj: Děkuju. A jaké je v tom koření? Není to moc ostré?
7. Číšnice: Je to jen lehce ostré. Nejsou tam chilli papričky, ale jen trochu červené papriky, pepře a hořčice.
8. Matěj: Tak to je fajn.
9. Matěj: Ještě si dám malé pivo a hned zaplatím.
10. Číšnice: Dobře. Přinesu vám účet.
11. Matěj: Děkuji. Spropitné už je v ceně?
12. Číšnice: Ne, není.

ENGLISH

1. Waitress: Hello. What would you like to eat?

CONT'D OVER

2. Matěj: Hello. I'd like the tartar steak. What meat is that, pork or beef?
3. Waitress: It's finely chopped beef, but we add a bit of anchovy paste and caviar.
4. Matěj: Oh, I don't eat caviar. Could I have it without the caviar?
5. Waitress: Yes, that's no problem.
6. Matěj: Thank you. And what type of spices are in it? Isn't it too spicy?
7. Waitress: It's only a little spicy. There are no chilli peppers, only red peppers, black pepper, and mustard.
8. Matěj: That's good.
9. Matěj: I'll have a small beer, too and will pay right away.
10. Waitress: Sure. I'll bring you the bill.
11. Matěj: Thank you. Is the tip included?
12. Waitress: No, it isn't.

VOCABULARY

Czech	English	Class
jídlo	meal	noun
dát si	to have, to take	perfective verb
maso	meat	noun
rád	like	adjective, adverb

bez	without	preposition
ostrý	spicy, hot, sharp	adjective
lehce	mildly, lightly	adverb
vadit	to bother, to mind	imperfective verb
spropitné	gratuity, tip	noun
cena	price	noun

SAMPLE SENTENCES

<p>Objednám si nějaké jídlo. "I'll order some food."</p>	<p>Co si dáte k pití? "What will you have to drink?"</p>
<p>Dáš si něco k pití? "Will you have something to drink?"</p>	<p>Ten recept obsahuje mleté maso. "This recipe contains minced meat."</p>
<p>Nejím maso a sýr. "I don't eat meat and cheese."</p>	<p>Jezdím rád na kole. "I like riding my bike."</p>
<p>Radši nechod' bez bot! "Better not walk without shoes!"</p>	<p>Pozor, jsou tu ostré střepy! "Careful, there are sharp fragments of glass here!"</p>
<p>To se lehce řekne. "It's easily said."</p>	<p>Vadí mu velký hluk. "He's bothered by loud noise."</p>
<p>Spropitné nechme na stole. "Let's leave the tip on the table."</p>	<p>Tohle je rozumná cena. "That's a reasonable price."</p>

Jaká je cena, prosím?

"What is the price, please?"

VOCABULARY PHRASE USAGE

dát si

"to have, to order"

The verb **dát** means "to have," and **si** is the reflexive pronoun meaning "to oneself."

The verb **dát si** literally means "to give to oneself," but in loose translation into English we translate this as "to have/ to take." This verb is reflexive, which means it has to be followed by the reflexive pronoun **si**, "to oneself" (**dám si, dáš, si, dá si...**). For example, **Co si dáme k jídlu?** "What shall we have to eat?", **Dám si jednou kafe.** "I'll have one coffee," or **Dáš si něco sladkýho?** "Will you have something sweet?"

For example:

1. *Dal bych si vanilkovou zmrzlinu.*
"I'd like vanilla ice-cream. "

bez

"without"

This is a preposition meaning "without," but it can also have the following meanings in English: "free from," "no," "short of," "without (somebody's) absence," "minus," "less," and also *bez* is often replaced in English by the suffix -less ("motionless"), or the prefix -un ("unarmed," "unrelated" etc.)

Some examples are **káva bez kofeinu**, "caffeine-free coffee/ decaffeinated coffee," **hra bez konce** "an endless game," **to je bez legrace** "this is no laughing matter," **dvě bez jedný** "two minus one," **vstup bez poplatku** "entry free of charge," **lod' bez posádky** "a boat without crew/ unmanned."

For example:

1. *Jednání probíhá bez dvou lidí.*
"The meeting is happening without two people (with two people absent.)"

účet "bill"

A masculine noun with several meanings: "a bill," "a bank account," "expense," "an invoice."

This noun can be used when talking about a bill, as in *tady je váš účet*, "here is your bill," when talking about a bank account *otevřít si bankovní účet* "open a current bank account," when talking about an expense *bavit se na něčí účet* "have fun at somebody's expense," *bude to na jeho účet* "It will be on his expenses," or when talking about an invoice, as in *přišel účet za zboží* "We got an invoice for the products."

For example:

1. *Připište to na účet.*
"Add it to my bill." or colloquial "Put it on my tab."

GRAMMAR

The Focus Of This Lesson Is Using the Present Tense and Conditional Tense to Talk to a Waitress About a Meal Order.

Dobrý den. Dal bych si tatarák. Jaké to je maso, vepřové nebo hovězí?
"Hello. I'd like to eat the tartar steak. What meat is in it, pork or beef?"

1. Conditional tense - review

The conditional tense in Czech corresponds to the English "would" and can be formed from both types of verbs, imperfective and perfective. Furthermore, conditional tense is applied in line with past tense. Let's see an example with the verb *jíst* "to eat":

Present tense: ***jíst*** "to eat"

Past tense: ***jedl*** "he ate" or ***jedla*** "she ate"

Conditional tense: ***jedl bych*** "I'd eat" (masculine speech), or ***jedla bych*** "I'd eat" (feminine speech).

As you can see, the conditional has the following pattern:

The subject (*já, ty, my*, etc) is usually unspoken, then comes a verb in its past tense + conditional form (*bych, bys, by, bysme, byste, by*).

The same above pattern also applies to reflexive verbs with reflexive pronouns *si* "to oneself," or *se* "oneself." For example, *dát si*, "to have/ to take."

Infinitive

Dát si jídlo.
"To have a meal."

Past tense

Dal si jídlo.
"He had a meal."

Dala si jídlo.
"She had a meal."

Conditional

Dal by si jídlo.
"He'd have a meal."

Dala by si jídlo.
"She'd have a meal."

The conjugation table of the conditional form of reflexive verb with reflexive pronoun *si*:

Singular

<i>dal bych si</i>	"I'd have/ take"
<i>dal by sis</i>	"you'd have/ take"
<i>dal, dala, dalo by si</i>	"he, she, it would have/ take"

Plural

<i>dali bysme si</i>	"we'd have/ take"
<i>dali byste si</i>	"you'd have/ take"
<i>dali by si</i>	"they'd have/ take"

When any personal pronoun, such as *já, my* "I, we" is used it is usually for an emphasis purpose (it is me who will have the food, it is we who will have the food). In such cases, the word order in the sentence changes. The verb is placed after the conditional form:

Já bych si dal.
"I would like/ have."

Ona by si dala.

"**She** would like/ have."

My bysme si dali.

"**We** would like/ have."

The conditional tense with imperfective and perfective verbs:

imperfective verb + conditional (process, repetition)

Jedl bych.

"I'd eat." or "I'd have something to eat."

Platil bych.

"I'd pay." or "I'd make the payment."

perfective verb + conditional (complete act)

Najedl bych se.

"I'd eat." or "I'd have something to eat."

Zaplatil bych.

"I'd pay." or "I'd make the payment."

The conditional tense on its own

In questions and answers:

Co byste si dali?

"What would you like (to eat)?"

Dal bych si polévku.

"I'd like soup."

In expressing a wish and polite enquiry:

Něco bych snědl!

"I'd like to eat something!"

Ukázala byste nám seznam vín?

"Would you show us the wine list?"

2.Adjectives describing food

When ordering food, it's important also to be able to describe the dishes. Here is a brief list of adjectives that can come in handy:

Czech	English	Example
--------------	----------------	----------------

<i>celozrný</i>	"wholemeal"	<i>celozrný chléb</i> - "wholemeal bread"
<i>syrový</i>	"raw"	<i>syrová zelenina</i> - "raw vegetables"
<i>suchý</i>	"dry"	<i>suché víno</i> - "dry wine"
<i>šťavnatý</i>	"juicy"	<i>šťavnatý steak</i> - "juicy steak"
<i>křupavý</i>	"crispy"	<i>křupavá kachna</i> - "crispy duck"
<i>smažený</i>	"fried"	<i>smažený řízek</i> - "fried schnitzel"
<i>grilovaný</i>	"grilled"	<i>grilované kuře</i> - "grilled chicken"
<i>vařený</i>	"boiled"	<i>vařené brambory</i> - "boiled potatoes"
<i>hustý</i>	"rich" or "thick"	<i>hustá omáčka</i> - "rich sauce"
<i>čerstvý</i>	"fresh"	<i>čerstvý salát</i> - "fresh salad"

Examples from the Dialogue

Aha, kaviár nejím. Mohl bych si to dát bez kaviáru?

"Oh, I don't eat caviar. Could I have it without the caviar?"

Děkuju. A jaké je v tom koření? Není to moc ostré?

"Thank you. And what type of spices are in it? Isn't it too spicy?"

Sample Sentences

Rád bych si objednal křupavá kachna.

"I'd like to order a crispy duck."

Chtěla bych to bez papriky, prosím.

"I'd like it without the peppers, please."

CULTURAL INSIGHT

Czech Food

A typical Czech meal starts with a soup. The most popular soups are potatoes, garlic, chicken with noodles, cabbage or beef soup with liver meatballs. The main course contains usually meat and a side dish. The most popular meats are chicken, pork and beef, served with some kind of sauce. Different types of sauces are the pride of Czech cuisine. A very important type of side dish are potatoes, which are the basic ingredients of many Czech dishes. Another special side dish are the various types of dumplings that cannot be left out of the national cuisine.

Besides the typical hot-dog-like **párek v rohlíku** ("a sausage in a bread-roll"), or a filled baguette with ham, cheese and lettuce, other types of street food vary from less healthy to much healthier options. Healthier options are becoming a trend mainly in the capital of Prague and other bigger cities, for example **polévkárna** "a soup buffet," where one can get a carrot cream soup with ginger and orange juice, or aubergine with vegetables and other home-made meals. *Pasta-Krusta*, a pasta buffet, is another chain, offering fresh homemade pasta served in three minutes with fresh herbs. Another popular chain is the vegetarian fast-food chain *Beas* that offers a lunch buffet, specialising in healthy, nutritious, and cheap food to the wide public.

There are many supermarkets to choose from in the Czech Republic. Larger supermarkets seem to be popular with Czech people who prefer to do their shopping twice a week, most often on Friday. The best supermarkets that have fulfilled required criteria after being inspected by the Czech Agriculture and Food Inspection Authority are **Ahold**, **Lidl** and **Macro**. **Zdravá potravina**, "healthy food," is a label on food products that distinguishes products of good quality, without unnecessary use of chemicals, and with information of the country of origin. There is also a nice website where one can view a database of these labeled food items, recipes, and explanations about the chemicals used in food processing- <http://www.zdravapotravina.cz/>.

Czech products are then labeled as **Český výrobek**, "Czech product," which enables to recognise Czech production from important products- <http://www.foodnet.cz>.

Useful expression:

Tuzemské potraviny.

"Domestic food products. "

LESSON NOTES

Beginner S1 #11

Is Your Czech Meal Too Spicy?

CONTENTS

- 2 Czech
- 2 English
- 3 Vocabulary
- 4 Sample Sentences
- 4 Vocabulary Phrase Usage
- 5 Grammar
- 11 Cultural Insight

11

CZECH

1. Jitka: Matěji, jak ti chutná tvoje jídlo?
2. Matěj: Hele, moje je výborný. To maso je křehký. Co tvoje?
3. Jitka: Ryba mi chutná. Ale ta jejich omáčka se mi zdá příliš opeřená.
4. Matěj: Ukaž, dej mi ochutnat.
5. Matěj: Hm, tvoje je fakt ostrá.
6. Jitka: Zeptám se, jestli nemají jinou. Prosim vás...
7. Číšnice: Je všechno v pořádku?
8. Jitka: Promiňte, nemáte jinou omáčku? Tahle je pro mě příliš pepřená.
9. Číšnice: Doporučuju naši specialitu. Jemná omáčka na rybu.
10. Jitka: Děkuju vám, jste moc laskavá.
11. Číšnice: Není zač. Počkejte chvíli, prosím.

ENGLISH

1. Jitka: Matěj, how do you like your food?
2. Matěj: Actually, mine is delicious. The meat is tender. What about yours?

CONT'D OVER

3. Jitka: The fish is really tasty, I like that. But the sauce seems too peppery for me.
4. Matěj: Let me taste it.
5. Matěj: Hm, yours is really hot.
6. Jitka: I'll ask if they have a different one. Excuse me...
7. Waitress: Is everything alright?
8. Jitka: Don't you have a different sauce? This one's too spicy for me.
9. Waitress: I recommend our specialty. It's a mild sauce for fish.
10. Jitka: Thank you. You're very kind.
11. Waitress: You're welcome. Just a moment please.

VOCABULARY

Czech	English	Class
chutnat	to like (about food)	perfective verb
tvoje	your, yours	possessive pronoun
jejich	their	possessive pronoun
zdát se	to seem	imperfective verb
příliš	too, much	adjective
pepřit	season with pepper	imperfective verb
ukázat	to show	verb
naše	our, ours	possessive pronoun

jiný	other	adjective
laskavý	kind	adjective

SAMPLE SENTENCES

<p>Nechte si chutnat. "Enjoy your meal."</p>	<p>Jaká je tvoje adresa? "What is your address?"</p>
<p>Tohle je jejich dům. "This is their house."</p>	<p>To se mi zdá divný. "This seems weird to me."</p>
<p>Tohle je příliš kyselý. "This is too sour."</p>	<p>Dětské jídlo se nemá pepřit. "Children's meals should not be peppered."</p>
<p>Prodavačka ukazuje šperky. "The shop assistant is showing jewelery."</p>	<p>Naše rodina je velká. "Our family is big."</p>
<p>Od včera mám jiný telefon. "I have had a different phone since yesterday."</p>	<p>Ten pán byl velmi laskavý. "The man was very kind."</p>

VOCABULARY PHRASE USAGE

chutnat

"to taste, to have a taste"

Chutnant does not have a direct equivalent in English, but can be translated as "to taste good/ bad," "to be delicious," but also "to have a flavor." It can refer to either a bad or good taste depending on the sentence.

This verb is always used when wishing somebody a good meal in the phrase *nechte si chutnat*, "enjoy your meal" (literally "allow yourselves to have a good taste"). It is also used to say what something tastes like: *chutná to výborně* "it

tastes good," or *chutná to hrozně*, "it tastes bad."

For example:

1. *Chutná to jako maso, ale je to soya.*
"It tastes like meat, but it's soy."

zdát se "to seem"

This imperfective verb has several meanings, to seem, to appear, but also to dream. *Zdát* means "seem, appear, dream." *Se* is the reflexive pronoun "oneself."

This is used when talking about dreaming, as in *zdál se mi sen* "I had a dream," or *zdálo se mi o tobě*, "I dreamed about you." It can be used in the sense of "to seem" or "to find something bad or good," ie. *zdá se mi to nepravděpodobné* "it seems improbable to me," or *nezdá se mi to zábavné* "I don't find it funny." When used in terms of appearing some way, some examples are *zdá se být pohublá* "she seems to be thinner" (meaning not looking well), and *zdá se mi to nespravedlivé*, "it appears unfair to me."

For example:

1. *To se ti jen zdá.*
"It only seems so to you."

být laskavý "to be kind"

být means "to be" and **laskavý** means "kind, kind-hearted, nice."

This is used in two different contexts, one positive and one negative. The positive is as follows: **být laskavý** "to be kind," **laskavá žena** "a kind woman," **to je od Vás laskavé** "it's very kind of you" (formal speech), **buďte prosím tak laskavý a...** "please be so kind as to..." In a negative or sarcastic sense, it can be used as **buď tak laskavý a nevměšuj se!** "be so 'kind' as to stop interfering!" or **buď tak laskavá a nechod' za mnou!** "be so 'kind' as to stop following me!"

For example:

1. *Buďte k sobě laskaví.*
"Be kind to each other.
(In plural, *lidé* "people," *laskavý* changes to *laskaví*.)

GRAMMAR

The Focus Of This Lesson Is Discussing an Ordered Meal while Using Personal Pronouns in the Nominative and Dative Forms.

Matěji, jak ti chutná tvoje jídlo?

"Matěji, how do you like your food?"

How to order

Let's start by reviewing some basic phrases you can use when visiting a café or a restaurant in the Czech Republic.

What to Expect From a Waiter

When at a café or a restaurant, the waiter or waitress may ask you one of the following phrases:

Czech	"English"
<i>Co si dáte paní?</i>	"What can I get you, ma'am?"
<i>Co si dáte pane?</i>	"What can I get you, sir?"
<i>Co si dáte?</i>	"What can I get you?"

When answering the question, you can choose any of these to start with:

dám si...

"I'll have..."

dáme si...

"We'll have..."

já si dám...

"I will have...:"

my si dáme...

"We will have.."

objednám si...

"I'll order..."

objednáme si...

"We'll order..."

After using one of these sentences, you just add the name of the food, drink, or dessert you have chosen.

Your meal

So you've chosen your meal, but what if everything is not exactly what you expected?

The waiter or waitress may ask you if everything is alright after you start eating.

Je všechno v pořádku?

"Is everything alright?"

Chutná vám?

"Do you like your meal?"

Here is your chance to speak up if there is a problem.

How do you start? Usually with **promiňte, ale...** "excuse me, but..." and then you can go straight to the problem. You can use some of these basic phrases:

promiňte, ale...

...to jídlo je moc...
"the meal is too"

...to maso je moc...
"the meat is too"

- *slané*
"salty"
- *studené*
"cold"
- *horké*
"hot"
- *mastné*
"greasy"
- *ostré*
"spicy"
- *kyselé*
"sour"
- *převařené*
"overcooked"

- *opepřené*
"peppered"

- *tvrdé*
"hard"

- *tuhé*
"chewy"

- *nedopečené*
"undercooked"

- *syrové*
"raw"

- *připálené*
"burnt"

...v jídle mám...
"there is a ...in my meal."

- *vlas*
"hair"

- *mouchu*
"fly"

- *písek*
"sand"

...moje porce je moc...
"my portion is too"

- *malá*
"small"
- *velká*
"big"

Example:

Promiňte, ale to jídlo je moc mastné.
"Excuse me, but the meal is too greasy."

Promiňte, ale to maso je moc syrové.
"Excuse me, but the meat is too raw."

Possessive pronouns

In addition to the listed vocabulary and expressions, you may also need to use possessive pronouns in your conversation about meal, especially if you are just chatting with your host.

Notice that in the dialogue, Jitka and Matěj discuss their meal at the table using possessive pronouns.

*Jak ti chutná **tvoje** jídlo?*
"How do you like **your** meal?"

***Moje** je výborný.*
"**Mine** is very good."

*Jak **tvoje**?*
"How about **yours**?"

***Jejich** omáčka se mi zdá moc pepřná.*
"**Their** sauce seems too peppered."

*Doporučuji **naši** specialitu.*
"I recommend **our** specialty."

Here is a table of possessive pronouns that you will find useful.

Possessive pronouns nominative

nominative 1st case singular

my	your	our	your	his	her	their
-----------	-------------	------------	-------------	------------	------------	--------------

masculine	<i>můj</i>	<i>tvůj</i>	<i>náš</i>	<i>váš</i>	<i>jeho</i>	<i>její</i>	<i>jejich</i>
feminine	<i>moje</i>	<i>tvoje</i>	<i>naše</i>	<i>vaše</i>	<i>jeho</i>	<i>její</i>	<i>jejich</i>
neuter	<i>moje</i>	<i>tvoje</i>	<i>naše</i>	<i>vaše</i>	<i>jeho</i>	<i>její</i>	<i>jejich</i>

Example sentences:

Moje jídlo je moc horké.
"My meal is too hot."

Moje polévka je studená.
"My soup is too cold."

Moje porce je moc malá.
"My portion is too small."

Tvoje porce je moc velká.
"Your portion is too big."

Tvoje maso je tuhé.
"Your meat is chewy."

Naše objednávka je špatná.
"Our order is wrong."

Jeho ryba je syrová.
"His fish is raw."

Její brambory jsou převařené.
"Her potatoes are overboiled."

Personal pronouns dative

Jitka and Matěj also speak about how their meals taste. Jitka says *ryba **mi** chutná* "the fish tastes good **to me**," but she continues by complaining about the sauce with *ale ta omáčka se **mi** zdá....* "but the sauce seems **to me**..."

Matěj says that he'd like to taste Jitka's meal, *dej **mi** ochutnat*, "let **me** taste it."

mi, "to me," is the dative 3rd declension case of the personal pronoun **já** "I."

já "I"	ty "you"	on "he"	ona "she"	ono/to "it"	my "we"	vy "you"	oni "they"
------------------	--------------------	-------------------	---------------------	-----------------------	-------------------	--------------------	----------------------

the dative

<i>mi</i>	<i>ti</i>	<i>mu</i>	<i>jí</i>	<i>mu</i>	<i>nám</i>	<i>vám</i>	<i>jim</i>
-----------	-----------	-----------	-----------	-----------	------------	------------	------------

The dative can be used as follows:

*Prosím, dejte **nám** menu.*
"Please give **us** a menu."

*Přineste **mi** sůl prosím.*
"Bring **me** some salt please."

*Podej **jí** příbor prosím tě.*
"Pass **her** some cutlery please?"

*Dej **mu** napít.*
"Give **him** something to drink."

*Přines **ti** ubrousky.*
"I will bring **you** napkins."

Examples from the Dialogue

Hele, moje je výborný. To maso je křehký. Co tvoje?
"Actually, mine is delicious. The meat is tender. What about yours?"

Ryba mi chutná. Ale ta jejich omáčka se mi zdá příliš opepřená.
"The fish is really tasty, I like that. But the sauce seems too peppery for me."

Sample Sentences

Jeho ryba je syrová.
"His fish is raw."

Promiňte, naše jídlo je studené.
"Excuse me, our meal is cold. "

CULTURAL INSIGHT

Fish in the Czech Republic

The Czech Republic isn't bordered by ocean on any side, so most fish available to

Czech citizens are pond and river fish. There are about 24,000 ponds in the Czech Republic, but not all are used for fish farming.

A large number of ponds were established during the 15th and 16th centuries and fish farming has about 500 years tradition in the Czech Republic.

The consumption of fish in the Czech Republic is not very high compared to countries with sea access. One of the reasons is the price. Imported seafood is relatively expensive and it takes up to three or four years for a pond fish to grow because of the weather climate of the Czech Republic. Warm weather, in which fish can grow, lasts only a short period of time, from spring to summer, which limits the production of fish in the country.

Among the most popular fish consumed in the Czech Republic is **Kapr obecný**, "carp," which is mostly eaten at Christmas and during the Christmas holidays. The second most popular is **pstruh** "trout," **candát** "perch," **štika** "pike," or **sumec** "catfish." There are about 28 different types of freshwater fish that are classified as consumer fish and the yearly production is about 20,000 tons, not only for domestic market, but also for export. Among those numbers, carp is the biggest seller.

A large number of ponds were established during the 15th and 16th centuries and fish farming has about 500 years tradition in the Czech Republic.

Useful expression:

Mořské plody
"Seafood."

LESSON NOTES

Beginner S1 #12

A Day of Czech Traffic Chaos

CONTENTS

- 2 Czech
- 2 English
- 3 Vocabulary
- 3 Sample Sentences
- 4 Vocabulary Phrase Usage
- 5 Grammar
- 10 Cultural Insight

12

CZECH

1. Matěj: Prosím, u telefonu Matěj Hollan.
2. Helena: Ahoj Matěji, tady Helena Černá.
3. Helena: Obávám se, že dorazím pozdě na schůzku.
4. Matěj: Aha. Copak se děje?
5. Helena: Vážně se omlouvám, ale uvázla jsem v zácpě. Jsem tu už 30 (třicet) minut.
6. Helena: Nevím, jestli je tam nějaká nehoda, nebo práce na silnici.
7. Matěj: Dobře, nic se neděje. Jitka taky přijde pozdě. V kolik asi dorazíš?
8. Helena: Upřímně, to netuším. Ten provoz se táhne. Možná budu mít spoždění 30 (třicet) minut.
9. Matěj: Dobře. Kdybys měla ještě větší spoždění, dej mi vědět.
10. Helena: Rozumim. Tak zatím.

ENGLISH

1. Matěj: Hello, Matěji Hollan speaking.
2. Helena: Hi Matěji, this is Helena Černá.
3. Helena: I'm afraid that I'll be late for the meeting.

CONT'D OVER

4. Matěj: I see. Is something going on?
5. Helena: I'm really sorry, but I'm stuck in a traffic jam. I've been here for the last thirty minutes.
6. Helena: I'm not sure if there's been an accident or if there's roadwork going on.
7. Matěj: I see. Don't worry. Jitka is also running late. When will you be here?
8. Helena: To be honest, I'm not sure. The traffic's been crawling. I may be thirty minutes late.
9. Matěj: Alright. If you're going to be any later, let me know.
10. Helena: I will. See you later.

VOCABULARY

Czech	English	Class
telefon	telephone	noun
obávat se	to be afraid	imperfective verb
dorazit	to arrive, to get somewhere	perfective verb
pozdě	late	adverb
vážně	seriously	adverb
uvíznout	to get stuck	perfective verb
dít se	to happen, to be going on	imperfective verb
upřímně	sincerely	adverb
tušit	to have a clue, to suspect	imperfective verb
dát	to give, to put in	verb

SAMPLE SENTENCES

<p>Je tu někde veřejný telefon? "Is there a public phone somewhere here?"</p>	<p>Jednu předplacenou kartu na telefon, prosím. "One cell-phone prepaid card, please."</p>
<p>Obávám se, že na to nemám čas. "I'm afraid I don't have time for this."</p>	<p>Dorazíme tam tak za deset minut. "We'll get there in ten minutes."</p>
<p>Už je pozdě, jdem spát. "It's late, we are going to sleep."</p>	<p>Myslím to vážně! "Seriously, I mean it!"</p>
<p>Někdo uvízl ve výtahu. "Somebody got stuck in the elevator."</p>	<p>Co se tady děje? "What's happening here?"</p>
<p>Něco se tu děje? "Is something happening here?"</p>	<p>To vůbec nemyslela upřímně. "She was not genuine."</p>
<p>Tušil jsem, že se to stane. "I anticipated that it would happen."</p>	<p>Dám si teď chvíli pauzu. "I'll take a break for a while now."</p>
<p>Dám si polívku. "I will have soup."</p>	<p>Dal do něho moc koření a teď se to nedá jíst. "He put in too many spices and now it is not edible anymore."</p>
<p>Můžete mi dát tohle? "Can you give me this?"</p>	<p>Otec dává mince. "The father is giving coins."</p>

VOCABULARY PHRASE USAGE

obávat se, že **"to be afraid that"**

obávat se is an imperfective verb that always uses the reflexive pronoun *se* ("oneself"), and **že** is a conjunction connecting a second sentence. The meaning of the verb is "to fear something," "to be worried about something," "to be concerned about something," or "to suspect something" (in the negative sense). When used with the conjunction meaning "that," the meaning becomes like in English "to be afraid that..."

Used in this context without the conjunction *že*, we have such examples as **obávat se nejhoršího**, "fear the worst," **obávat se soupeře**, "to be afraid of the opponent," **obávat se o někoho** "to be concerned about somebody." With the conjunction **že**, **obávat se, že je pozdě** "to be afraid that it is too late," **obávám se, že ano/ne...** "I'm afraid that yes/no..."

For example:

1. *Obávám se, že je řada na mě.*
"I'm afraid that it's my turn now. "

být upřímný **"to be honest"**

být is an imperfective verb meaning "to be, to exist," and **upřímný** means "genuine, sincere, honest or frank."

This is used, for example, at the end of a formal letter as **s upřímným pozdravem** "with sincere regards (+ name)," when you're giving condolences as **upřímnou soustrast** "sincere condolences," for expressing regrets as **upřímnou lítost** "sincere regret," and when speaking with somebody sincerely as **byl velmi upřímný** "he was very frank," or **abych byl upřímný** "to be frank, to be very honest..."

For example:

1. *Abych byl upřímný, je to risk.*
"To be honest, it's a risk. "

GRAMMAR

The Focus Of This Lesson Is Useful Expressions for Apologizing.

Obávám se, že dorazím pozdě na schůzku.
"I'm afraid that I'll be late for the meeting."

Useful expressions to apologize

If you live or work in the Czech Republic, there will be situations in which you may need to apologize for something. In the lesson dialogue, Helena needs to apologize for being late to a meeting. She makes a phone call to her colleague Matěj and starts by announcing the bad news about her delay:

Obávám se, že dorazím pozdě na schůzku.
"I'm afraid that I'll be late for the meeting."

Obávat se can be used just like the English "to be afraid." It is used when breaking the bad news and when the sentence has a negative connotation. **Obávat se** is a reflexive verb that needs the reflexive pronoun *se* "oneself."

Obávám se, že... literally "I'm afraid myself that..."

The context of a sentence using **obávat se** can differ:

- *Obávám se, že dnes nemohu přijít.*
"I'm afraid that I cannot come today."
- *Obávám se, že to budeme muset zrušit.*
"I'm afraid that we'll have to cancel it."
- *Obávám se, že už nemáme čas.*
"I'm afraid that we don't have time anymore."

Omlouvat se. "To apologize for oneself" is another way of making an apology.

- *Omlouvám se, že jdu pozdě.*
"I apologize for coming late."
- *Omlouvám se, že jsem na to zapomněl.*
"I apologize that I forgot about it."
- *Omlouvám se, že to nevyšlo.*
"I apologize that it failed."

Adding an adverb, such as **vážně** "seriously," **strašně** "terribly," **upřímně** "sincerely," **velmi** "very much" makes a deeper apology.

- *Vážně se omlouvat.*
"Seriously oneself to apologize." (lit.)
- *Strašně se omlouvat.*
"Terribly oneself to apologize." (lit.)

- *Upřímně se omlouvat.*
"Sincerely oneself to apologize." (lit.)
- *Velmi se omlouvat.*
"Very much oneself to apologize." (lit.)

Literally the phrase means "seriously oneself to apologize" but in loose translation the meaning is "I really apologize, I'm really sorry." This phrase is used when a genuine apology is needed. In such cases, it is good to include the adverb **vážně**, "really, honestly."

However, please note that **vážně** is an informal way of speaking. For formal situations this adverb should be swapped for **velmi**, "very, very much."

informal:

- *Vážně se omlouvám, ale uvázla jsem v zácpě.*
"I sincerely apologize, but I've been stuck in a traffic jam."
- *Strašně se omlouvám, že to s sebou nemám.*
"I'm terribly sorry that I don't have it with me."

formal:

- *Velmi se omlouvám, za zrušení programu.*
"I'm very sorry for cancelling the program."
- *Upřímně se omlouvám, za tuto nepříjemnost.*
"I sincerely apologize for this inconvenience."

Basic apologies and answers:

Lituji, že...
"I feel sorry that/ I regret that"

Lituji, že jsem vás nechal čekat.
"I'm sorry that I kept you waiting."

Je mi líto, že...
"I'm sorry that..."

Je mi líto, že jsem nepřišel včas.
"I'm sorry that I didn't come in time."

Velmi se omlouvám, že...
"I apologise very much that.."

Velmi se omlouvám, že jsem vám to nedal vědět.
"I really apologize that I didn't let you know."

Velmi se omlouvám za...
"I apologize very much for..."

Velmi se omlouvám za ty ztracené papíry.
"I really apologize for the lost papers."

Bohužel...
"Unfortunately..."

Bohužel mi to nevyšlo.
"Unfortunately, I couldn't make it."

Bohužel to byla má chyba.
"Unfortunately it was my mistake."

Other types of apologies:

1. formal
2. informal

1. *Promiňte, nechtěl jsem.*
"I'm sorry, I didn't mean to."

2. *Promiň, nechtěl jsem.*

1. *Omluvte mě, budu hned zpět.*
"Excuse me, I'll be right back."

2. *Omluv mě, budu hned zpět.*

1. *Promiňte, nevěděl jsem.*
"I'm sorry/ I apologise, I didn't know."

2. *Promiň, nevěděl jsem.*

1. *Nezlobte se, nechtěl jsem.*
"I'm sorry, I didn't mean to." (Lit.: "Don't be angry, I didn't mean to.")
2. *Nezlob se, nechtěl jsem.*
 1. *Mrzí mě, že jsem vám nepomohl.*
"I regret that I didn't help you."
 2. *Mrzí mě, že jsem ti nepomohl.*

Answers:

To je v pořádku.
"That's alright."

To nevadí.
"It doesn't matter."

Co se dá dělat.
"It can't be helped."

Nevadí.
"Nevermind."

Ach tak, to je v pořádku.
"I see. That's all right."

Nemusíte se omlouvat.
"You needn't apologize."

Netřeba se omlouvat.
"No need to apologize."

Examples from the Dialogue

Vážně se omlouvám, ale uvázla jsem v zácpě. Jsem tu už 30 (třicet) minut.
"I'm really sorry, but I'm stuck in a traffic jam. I've been here for the last thirty minutes. "

Upřímně, to netuším. Ten provoz se táhne. Možná budu mít spoždění 30 (třicet) minut.
"To be honest, I'm not sure. The traffic's been crawling. I may thirty minutes late. "

Sample Sentences

Velmi se omlouvám, dnes to nestihnu.
"I sincerely apologize, I won't make it today."

Rád bych se omluvil za to nedorozumění.
"I'd like to apologize for the misunderstanding."

Je mi líto, že se to nepovedlo.
"I'm very sorry that it didn't come out. "

CULTURAL INSIGHT

Work and holidays

According to law, working hours in the Czech Republic should not exceed 40 hours per week under usual working conditions, and 37.5 hours for jobs that require shifts or that have hard working conditions, such as underground work, mining, or geological surveying. The 40 working hours is divided into 8 hours per day, five days a week. People younger than 18 years old must not exceed the 8 hours per day by law. A one hour lunch break is not included in the working hours.

Generally speaking, working hours in the private sector and government institutions differ. Larger companies may have a so-called collective contract, in which they specify conditions and alternatives. This usually includes matters such as extra pay for overtime, extra days off, subsidies for holidays or children's schooling, retirement, and so on.

The annual holiday entitlement is four weeks in total, but it can be extended under collective contract depending on the company. The longest period allowed for consecutive holidays is usually two weeks, but it's subject to company conditions. Most Czech people tend to take their main holidays in July and leave some time for the Christmas period. This is often due to the school holidays. The second most popular time to take holidays is in August and September.

Useful expression:

Kolektivní dohoda.
"Collective contract. "

LESSON NOTES

Beginner S1 #13

How Do You Get to this Czech Airport?

CONTENTS

- 2 Czech
- 2 English
- 3 Vocabulary
- 4 Sample Sentences
- 5 Vocabulary Phrase Usage
- 5 Grammar
- 11 Cultural Insight

13

CZECH

1. Helena: Prosím vás, jak se odsud dostaneme městskou dopravou na letiště?
2. Matěj: Tady je stanice metra Florenc. To je linka B.
3. Matěj: Musíte jet linkou B na stanici Můstek a tam přestoupit na linku A.
4. Helena: Dobře. A kam potom?
5. Matěj: Na stanici Dejvická. Tam musíte vystoupit směr letiště. Musíte jít po schodech nahoru a doprava.
6. Helena: Tam už je hned letiště?
7. Matěj: Ne, ale odtamtud se dá jet autobusem číslo 113 (sto třináct) přímo na letiště.
8. Helena: A jak dlouho to trvá na letiště?
9. Matěj: Asi 30 (třicet) minut. Lístky se dají koupit v metru.
10. Helena: Aha, děkujeme.
11. Matěj: Není zač.

ENGLISH

1. Helena: Excuse me, how do we get from here to the airport on public transportation?
2. Matěj: This metro station is Florenc. It's link B.

CONT'D OVER

3. Matěj: You need to take link B to Můstek Station and transfer to link A.
4. Helena: I see. And then where?
5. Matěj: To Dejvická Station. You have to get off there and exit toward the airport. You have to go upstairs and to the right.
6. Helena: The airport is right there?
7. Matěj: No, but you can take bus 113 directly to the airport from there.
8. Helena: And how long does it take to get to the airport?
9. Matěj: About thirty minutes. Tickets can be purchased at the metro station.
10. Helena: Oh, thank you.
11. Matěj: You're welcome.

VOCABULARY

Czech	English	Class
dostat se	to get to	perfective verb
letišťe	airport	noun
stanice	station, stop	noun
muset	to have to	imperfective verb
přestoupit	to transfer, to change	perfective verb
jet	to go	imperfective verb
vystoupit	to get off	perfective verb

odtamtud	from there	adverb
jezdit	to run, to go, to ride	imperfective verb
trvat	to take, to last	verb

SAMPLE SENTENCES

<p>Tudy se dostanem domů. "This way we can get home."</p>	<p>V dálce už vidím letiště. "In the distance I can see the airport."</p>
<p>Kvůli špatnému počasí dnes neodlétají z letiště žádné lety. "There are no flights leaving the airport today, due to the stormy weather."</p>	<p>Tady na té stanici vystoupíme. "We'll get off at this station."</p>
<p>Musíme si pospíšet. "We have to hurry up."</p>	<p>Nezapomeň přestoupit na další stanici. "Don't forget to transfer at the next stop."</p>
<p>Lidé jedou do Los Angeles. "People are going to Los Angeles."</p>	<p>Jedeme na výlet. "We're going on a trip."</p>
<p>Lidé jedou do Los Angeles. "They are going to Los Angeles."</p>	<p>Cestující vystoupili na konečné. "The passengers got off at the terminal station."</p>
<p>Odtamtud jezdí vlak do Prahy. "The train to Praha goes from over there."</p>	<p>Vlaky jezdí každou půlhodinu. "Trains run every thirty minutes."</p>

Trvá to dlouho. "It's taking a long time."	Trvá to dlouho. "It takes a long time."
--	---

VOCABULARY PHRASE USAGE

dostat se "to get to"

dostat means "to get to (somewhere)," and **se** is the reflexive pronoun "oneself."

Dostat se is a frequently used phrase for asking how to get somewhere, as in **jak se dostaneme na nádraží?** "How do we get to the railway station?", **jak se teď dostaneme domů?** "How do we get home now?" or when talking about a situation, as in **dostali jsme se do potíží** "We got into trouble," **dostat se do konfliktu** "get into conflict with somebody." It's also used in terms of changing a position, as in **dostat se do výběru** "be shortlisted," **dostat se do popředí**, "come to the fore," **dostat se do vedení**, "take the lead."

For example:

1. *Dostat se za mříže.*
"To get jailed. "

dá se... "it is possible to..."

dá means "something is possible/ can be" and **se** is the reflexive pronoun meaning "oneself." These two words cannot be separated. Together, **dá se** has the meaning of "it is possible/ something is possible" to be done, or used, changed, entered, etc.

The use of this phrase is very wide and translation into English depends on the context. Not every sentence can be translated as "it is possible." Some examples are **dá se tu projít** "it's possible to go through here/ we can go through here," **dá se mu věřit** "he can be trusted," **dá se tam jít pěšky** "it's within walking distance/ one can get there on foot," **dá se tu zaparkovat** "it's possible to park here/ we can park here," and **dá se říct, že...** "it can be said that..."

For example:

1. *Dá se to zjistit.*
"It's possible to find out."

GRAMMAR

The Focus Of This Lesson Is Giving Directions and Using Verbs of Motion Combined with *Dá Se* and *Muset*.

Ne, ale odtamtud se dá jet autobusem číslo 113 (sto třináct) přímo na letiště.

"No, but you can take bus 113 directly to the airport from there."

1. Verbs of motion and static verbs

In Czech, when we speak about going somewhere (verbs of movement/ motion), we express motion, direction, and location differently.

- With the **motion** and **direction**, we need to ask the question *kam?* "where to?"
- With the **location**, we need to ask question *kde?* "where?"

We connect **dynamic verbs** with **motion** and **direction**.

We connect **static verbs** with **location**.

Dynamic verbs: where to?	Static verbs: where?
<i>jet</i> "to go by a vehicle," "to ride"	<i>být</i> "to be"
<i>jít</i> "to go on foot," "to walk"	<i>bydlet</i> "to reside"
<i>letět</i> "to fly"	<i>žít</i> "to live"

Examples:

Kam? "Where to?"

Jet autobusem na letiště.

"Go to the airport by bus." (by transport)

Jet metrem na konečnou stanici.

"Go to the terminal station by metro."

Jít do školy.

"Go to school." (on foot)

Jít na procházku.

"Go for a walk." (on foot)

Letět na dovolenou.
"To fly (somewhere) on holidays."

Kde? "Where?"

Být na stanici.
"To be at the station"

Jsem na stanici.
"I'm at the station."

Bydlet blízko letiště.
"To reside near the airport."

Bydlím blízko letiště.
"I reside/ live near the airport."

Žít v České Republice.
"To live in the Czech Republic."

Žiju v České Republice.
"I live in the Czech Republic."

Declension of the verb **jít**

já jdu "I go"	my jdeme "we go"
ty jdeš "you go"	vy jdete "you go"
on/ ona jde "he/she goes"	oni jdou "they go"

Declension of the verb **jet**

já jedu "I ride"	my jedeme "we ride"
ty jedeš "you ride"	vy jedete "you ride"
on/ona jede "he/she rides"	oni jedou "thy ride"

Jít "to go" and *jet* "to go by a vehicle" can also both mean "coming."

- *(on/ona) jde sem*
"(he/she) is coming on foot / walking here."
- *(on/ona) jede sem*
"(he/she) is coming/ going by vehicle here."

2.The Modal Verb *muset*

When somebody gives you directions of where to go, they often say "you have to go (there and there). "Have to" in Czech is expressed with the verb **muset**. **Muset** means the same as the English "have to" or "must." In Czech, there's no distinction between those two English verbs. It's always the same verb, **muset**, whenever you talk about the necessity of doing something. **Muset** is followed by a verb in its infinitive form. In the lesson dialogue, you can see this structure in these sentences:

Musíte jet linkou B na stanici Můstek a tam přestoupit na linku A.
"You need to take link B to Můstek Station and transfer there to link A."

Below you will find a table with the conjugation of *muset*:

Singular

	Czech	English
<i>já</i>	<i>musím</i>	"I have to"
<i>ty</i>	<i>musíš</i>	"you have to"
<i>on/ona/ono</i>	<i>musí</i>	"he/she/it has to"

Plural

	Czech	English
<i>my</i>	<i>musíme</i>	"we have to"
<i>wy</i>	<i>musíte</i>	"you have to"
<i>oni</i>	<i>musí</i>	"they have to"

Connecting verb *muset* with "going" or "riding."

You will often hear these type of expressions:

- *Musíte jít....*
"you have to go (on foot)," or "you have to walk".
- *Musíte jet*
"you have to go (by a vehicle)"

In the dialogue, Matěj explains to Helena that she needs to go upstairs from the underground station and turn right by saying *Musíte jít po schodech nahoru a doprava*. "You have to go upstairs and to the right."

Other examples:

jít - "on foot"

Musíte jít po schodech nahoru
"you must go upstairs"

Musíte jít do prava
"you must go to the right"

Musíte jít do leva
"you must go to the left"

Musíte jít nahoru
"you must go up"

Musíte jít dolů
"you must go down"

Musíte jít rovně
"you must go straight ahead"

jet - "by a vehicle"

Musíte jet po hlavní silnici
"you must go on the main road"

Musíte jet do leva
"you must go to the left"

Musíte jet do prava
"you must go to the right"

Musíte jet směrem na Prahu
"you must go the direction for Prague"

Musíte jet rovně
"you must go straight ahead"

3.The phrase *dá se* "it is possible"

When you hear people giving instruction on how to go or ride to somewhere, you may be told ***dá se jet***, or ***dá se jít***. This phrase is a subjectless construction meaning: "it is possible to go by a vehicle/transport (somewhere)." or "it is possible to go on foot" (somewhere)."

In English the subject is "it," but in Czech this is omitted.

The verb which follows after **dá se**, is always in its infinitive form.

Dá se jít pěšky.

"It's possible to walk/ it's walkable."

Dá se jít podél silnice.

"It's possible to walk alongside the road."

Dá se jet okolo.

"It's possible to drive there around."

Dá se jet metrem.

"It's possible to go on the metro."

Dá se jet autobusem.

"It's possible to go by bus."

When the sentence starts with a subject, **dá se** changes its word order to **se dá**.

Na hrad se dá jít pěšky.

"It's possible to go to the castle on foot."

Na letiště se dá jet autobusem.

"It's possible to go to the airport by bus."

Na Vyšehrad se dá jet metrem.

"It's possible to take the metro to Vysehrad."

Na rozhlednu se dá jet lanovkou.

"It's possible to take the elevator to the viewing tower."

Na rozhlednu se dá jít pěšky.

"It's possible to walk to the viewing tower."

Dá se is also used when something is possible to do, to be done, to buy, to get, etc....

You can see this pattern in the lesson dialogue where Matěj talks about the possibility of going by bus: *Ne, ale odtamtud se dá jet autobusem číslo 113 (sto třináct) přímo na letiště.* "No, but you can take bus 113 directly to the airport from there."

When the sentence starts with a subject, **dá se** changes its word order to **se dá**.

Lístek se dá koupit v trafice.

"Ticket can be bought in newsstand."

Lístek se dá koupit v metru.

"Ticket can be bought in the underground."

Tady se dá zastavit.

"It's possible to stop here." (i.e. a car)

Támhle se dá chytit taxi.

"It's possible to catch a taxi over there."

Taxi se dá objednat.

"A taxi can be called."

To se dá sehnat.

"This can be fetched." (lit. translation) / "You can get ahold of such thing." (loose translation)

To se dá spravit.

"It's possible to fix this/ This can be fixed."

Examples from the Dialogue

Asi 30 (třicet) minut. Lístky se dají koupit v metru.

"About thirty minutes. Tickets can be purchased at the metro station. "

Prosím vás, jak se odsud dostaneme městskou dopravou na letiště?

"Excuse me, how do we get from here to the airport by public transport?"

Sample Sentences

Z Prahy se dá jet přímo do Vídně.

"One can travel directly from Prague to Vienna."

Musíte se dostat na druhou stranu.

"You need to get onto the other side."

CULTURAL INSIGHT

Airport

The biggest international airport in the Czech Republic is in Prague and it has three terminals. It's located in the northwest on the outskirts of Prague, about 17 km away. It takes roughly 25 minutes by car or 55 minutes by public transport to get to the city of Prague.

The public transport available includes buses going directly from the airport to the nearest underground (metro) station, and the Airport Express bus that goes to the main train station. The last buses of the day run around 23:40 and after that you can only use night buses that run from the airport with longer intervals between them. Since the Prague Metro closes at midnight, if you're transferring from an airport bus it's possible to use night trams and night buses to get to your destination. Those too run with longer intervals between them, usually every 30 minutes.

For those who want to use a different kind of transportation, there are taxis lined up in front of the station waiting for customers. There are two taxi companies stationed directly at the airport, *Fix Airport Cars* and *AAA Taxi*, and their operators are located inside terminal 1 and 2.

Shuttle buses are also available, running from the airport to the city center once every 30 minutes. This service is only for passengers with standard luggage (one suitcase and one piece of hand luggage per person). Customers with more luggage need to use a different service. The prices are fixed, 150 Czech koruna per person.

Personal pick up by friends, relatives or company driver is possible, and there is a car park in front of the airport that allows paid parking, which costs 50 Czech koruna per hour, or drop off service to collect people and assist with luggage. This service is free for 15 minutes.

Useful expression:

Městská hromadná doprava.
"Public transport. "

LESSON NOTES

Beginner S1 #14

Telling Your Hairdresser What You Want in Czech

CONTENTS

- 2 Czech
- 2 English
- 3 Vocabulary
- 4 Sample Sentences
- 4 Vocabulary Phrase Usage
- 5 Grammar
- 10 Cultural Insight

14

CZECH

1. Kadeřník: Dobrý den. Jak byste si přála ostříhat?
2. Jitka: Zkrátit a tady to trochu nahoru.
3. Kadeřník: Dobře, takže to zkrátíme. O kolik centimetrů?
4. Jitka: Asi o dva až tři centimetry.
5. Jitka: Ale vzadu bych ráda postupný sestřih, aby to nebylo stejně dlouhý.
6. Kadeřník: Rozumím. Jak byste chtěla tu ofinu?
7. Jitka: Sčesat dolů a zarovnat konečky.
8. Kadeřník: A na kterou stranu si rozdělujete pěšinku?
9. Jitka: Na levou.
10. Kadeřník: Dobře, takže necháme původní tvar, jen to zkrátím a upravím.
11. Jitka: Ano, přesně tak bych to chtěla.

ENGLISH

1. Hairdresser: Hello. How would you like your hair cut?
2. Jitka: Shorten it and here a bit up.
3. Hairdresser: All right, so we'll shorten it. How many centimeters?

CONT'D OVER

4. Jitka: About two to three centimeters.
5. Jitka: But at the back I'd like some layers so that it's not all the same length.
6. Hairdresser: I understand. And how about the fringe?
7. Jitka: Also shorter, but not too much. Mainly to adjust the ends.
8. Hairdresser: And onto which side do you have the parting?
9. Jitka: To the left.
10. Hairdresser: Okay, so I'll keep the original shape, just shorten it and adjust.
11. Jitka: Yes, that's exactly what I'd like.

VOCABULARY

Czech	English	Class
přát si	to wish	verb, imperfective verb
ostříhat	to cut, trim, clip, shear	perfective verb
nahoru	up	adverb
trochu	a bit, a little	adverb
zkrátit	to shorten, to cut (something) short	perfective verb
o	about	preposition
aby	so that, in order to	conjunction
dolů	down	adverb
nechat	to keep, to leave, to preserve, to let	perfective verb

SAMPLE SENTENCES

<p>Co si přeješ k narozeninám? "What do you wish for your birthday?"</p>	<p>Přejete si něco dalšího? "Would you like anything else?"</p>
<p>Nechám se ostříhat. "I'll have my hair cut."</p>	<p>Pojedu nahoru výtahem. "I'll go up by elevator."</p>
<p>Jsem trochu unavená. "I'm a little bit tired."</p>	<p>Ta záclona se musí zkrátit. "The curtain has to be shortened."</p>
<p>Bavíme se o tobě. "We're talking about you."</p>	<p>Nemám rád příběhy o medvědech. "I dislike stories about bears."</p>
<p>Chci, aby to fungovalo. "I want this to work."</p>	<p>Chci, aby ses měl dobře. "I want you to be well."</p>
<p>Dolů půjdem po schodech. "We'll go down by the staircase."</p>	<p>Nemůžu tě tu nechat. "I can't leave you here."</p>
<p>Uprav si tu košili. "Tidy up your shirt."</p>	

VOCABULARY PHRASE USAGE

Přát si -
"To wish"

The imperfective verb, **přát**, means "to wish, to desire, to yearn", but also "want". *Si* - is the reflexive pronoun "to oneself".

When used in terms of "wish, desire, yearn", **přát si** is used either without a connector, meaning "to wish to get something", (ie. *Přát si nové boty* = "to wish to have new shoes", *Přát si něco* = "to wish something") OR with a connector like *-aby* (ie. *přát si, aby pršelo* = "to wish it was raining", *přát si, aby se uzdravil* = "to wish he got healthy/well").

For example:

Přej si něco.
"Make a wish."

O kolik - **"by how much," "about how much"**

o is a preposition meaning "by, about" and **kolik** means "how much". Together, it expresses "by how much", or "by how little".

It is used in these kind of situations:

- When talking about age (*O kolik je starší?* = "By how much older is he?", *O kolik je mladší?* = "By how much younger is she?").
- When talking about money (*O kolik jsi platil víc?* = "By how much more did you pay?", *O kolik jsi platil méně?* = "By how much less did you pay?").
- When talking about a target (*O kolik jsi minul cíl?* = "By how much/ little did you miss the target?").

For example:

O kolik mám spoždění?
"By how much am I late?"

GRAMMAR

The Focus Of This Lesson Is Using Adverbs and Aby ("so that") to Explain How You Want Your Haircut.

Dobrý den. Jak byste si přála ostříhat?
"Hello. How would you like your hair cut?"

1. Using positional and directional words

When you go to hairdressers while in the Czech Republic, it's good if you can explain your desired hairstyle, besides bringing a picture.

The most useful words when giving directions for cutting hair are adverbs of location.

Here are some useful Czech adverbs to choose from:

vpředu "at the front"	na levo "on the left"
vzadu "at the back"	na pravo "on the right"
nahoře "up," "on the top"	blízko "near to" vedle "next to"
dole "down"	na druhé straně "on the other side"
na straně "on the side"	do strany "to the side"
nahoru "up"	dolů "down to"

We use the above adverbs as follows:

Vlasy **vpředu** nechat delší.
"Leave the hair **at the front** a little longer."

Vlasy **vzadu** ostříhat.
"Cut the hair **at the back.**"

Nahoře zkrátit.
"Shorten **on the top.**"

Na straně zkrátit.
"Shorten **on the side.**"

Vyčesat **nahoru**.
"Comb the hair **up.**"

Pěšinku **na levo**.
"Part **to the left.**"

Pěšinku **na pravo**.
"Part **to the right.**"

Blízko uší.

"Close to the ears."

Na druhé straně jsou vlasy delší.
"Longer hair **on the other side**"

Dolů na ramena.
"Down to the shoulders."

2. Adjectives

We can also use **adjectives** to describe the type of hair. Some common ones are:

husté "thick"	vlnité "wavy"
jemné "fine"	kudrnaté "curly, frizzy"
krátké "short"	zplihlé "lank, limp"
dlouhé "long"	hladké "sleek"
lesklé "glossy"	rozcuchané "ruffled"

3. Adverbs

Czech adverbs often derive from adjectives. They become adverbs by changing the ending to **,-e,** or **-ě.**

In English, this is done by adding a suffix **,-ly** (soft-softly, smooth-smoothly, etc.)

The adjectives above can become adverbs in the Czech language, although the English equivalent sometimes needs to be translated as "in a way".

hustě "thick"	vlnitě "wavily, in a wavy manner"
jemně "softly"	kudrnatě "in a curly way"
krátce "short, shortly"	zplihle "limply"
dlouze "at length, lengthily"	hladce "smoothly"
leskle "in a glossy way, glossy"	rozcuchaně "in a ruffled way, ruffled"

Examples of some sentences:

- **kučeravé** vlasy
"wavy, curly hair"

- *aby vlasy vypadaly **hustě***
"so that the hair looks thick"
- *tady to **krátce** setřihnu*
"here I'll cut it short"
- *vlasy vypadají **leskle***
"the hair looks shiny"
- *vlasy **hladce** vyfoukáme*
"we'll gently blow-dry your hair"
- *mé vlasy vypadají **zplihle***
"my hair looks limp"
- *učes působí **rozcuchaně***
"this hairstyle looks ruffled"

4. **Aby** - expressing a purpose

In the Czech grammar, *aby* is a conjunction. It expresses a purpose and can be compared to the English "in order to", or "so that", or "that." In written Czech, a comma is needed in front of *aby*.

In Czech language *aby* is followed by a verb in its **past tense**, or negated verb in its **past tense**.

*Ale vzadu bych ráda postupný sestřih, aby to **nebylo** stejně dlouhý*
"But at the back I'd like some layers, so that it's not all the same length."

*Prosím ostříhejte mi ořínku, aby mi **nepadala** do očí.*
"Please cut my fringe so that it doesn't fall into my eyes."

*Natočit vlasy, aby **byly** vlnité.*
"To perm my hair so that it's wavy."

*Obarvit vlasy, aby **se zakryly** šediny.*
"To dye my hair in order to cover gray hair."

Aby - expressing a wish and instructions with conjugated *aby*

For expressing instructions or wishes with *aby*, the translation can differ in English.

Conjugation of *aby*

Singular Plural

abych	that I	abychom/ abysme	that we
abys	that you	abyste	that you
aby	that he, she, it	aby	that they

Řekla mi, abych si ostříhal vlasy.

"She told me to cut my hair." / "She told me *that I would cut my hair*" (lit. transl.)

Chtěl, abych si obarvila vlasy.

"He wanted me to dye my hair." / "He wanted *that I would dye my hair*." (lit. transl.)

Maminka si přála, aby šel k holiči.

"Mum wanted him to go to the hairdresser's." / "Mum wanted *that he would go to the hairdresser's*." (lit. transl.)

For reflexive verbs with reflexive pronouns *se* ("oneself") and *si* ("for/ to oneself"), the reflexive pronouns have to be part of the verb even in *aby* sentences.

aby + se, si + verb in past tense

abych se, si	"that I (myself, to myself)"	abychom se, si abysme se, si	"that we (ourselves, to ourselves)"
aby ses	"that you (yourself, to yourself)"	abyste se, si	"that you (yourselves, to yourselves)"
aby se	"that he (himself, to himself) that she (herself, to herself) that it (itself, to itself)"	aby se, si	"that they (themselves, to themselves)"

ostříhat si vlasy ("to cut hair to oneself") = **abych si ostříhal vlasy** ("that I would cut my hair")

obarvit si vlasy ("to dye hair to oneself") = **aby si obarvila vlasy** ("that she would dye her hair")

učesat se ("to brush oneself hair") = **aby se učesal** ("that he would brush his hair.")

Aby can be used also in negative sentences. In the dialogue we have:

Ale vzadu bych ráda postupný sestřih, aby to nebylo stejně dlouhý.
"But at the back I'd like some layers, **so that it's not** all the same length."

aby to nebylo = "so that it's not"

Aby to nebylo jako minule.
"Hopefully it won't be like last time."

Aby se to nerozbilo, dám to stranou
"In order not to break it, I'll put it away."

Examples from the Dialogue

Ale vzadu bych ráda postupný sestřih, aby to nebylo stejně dlouhý.
"But at the back I'd like some layers so that it's not all the same length. "

Rozumím. Jak byste chtěla tu ofínu?
"I understand. And how about the fringe?"

Sample Sentences

Prosím natočit tak, aby to nebylo moc vlnité.
"Please curl my hair up, but so that it is not too wavy."

Použiju lehký kondicionér, aby vlasy nebyly zplihlé.
"So that it wasn't too limp."

Chtěla bych ostříhat, ale aby to nebylo moc krátké.
"I'd like a hair cut, but so that it wasn't too short."

CULTURAL INSIGHT

Hairdresser

The Czech Republic has many hairdressers that are often divided into "men's and women's hair salons." **Pánské a dámské kadeřnictví.**

Before, it was possible to see barber shops quite frequently, but over time

they have slowly decreased and have been replaced by hair salons for men. Occasionally, there are some salons that may have "Barber" in their name, such as one called "Thomas Barber," but shops like this tend to only be located usually in Prague or other big cities. There may also be shops that distinguish the services by

stating "hairdresser" or "barber" in their name (***Kadeřnictví a holičství***).

It is also common to have unisex hairdressers that cater to both men and women, or hairdressers simply called a salon or a studio with some additional name attached. Some salons or studios, besides the hair cut, offer other services such as manicures, pedicures, hair consulting, facial massages, etc.

Appointments can be done by phone or dropping by in person, and also through the Internet (only available with some hairdressers).

Some hairdressers are very flexible and you don't need to reserve in advance. If they have staff available to do your hair, they will do it right away; especially in Prague where they make an effort to shorten the waiting time. Hairdressers may have flexible opening times based on appointments with customers, or fixed opening times. Be careful though, since many hairdressers will be closed for Christmas and around New Years.

Useful expression:

Kadeřnický salón.

"Hairdressers salon. "

LESSON NOTES

Beginner S1 #15

Talking About Your Favorite Celebrity in Czech

CONTENTS

2	Czech
2	English
3	Vocabulary
3	Sample Sentences
4	Vocabulary Phrase Usage
6	Grammar
10	Cultural Insight

15

CZECH

1. Matěj: Víš že George Clooney je označen za nejmoc sexy muže světa?
2. Helena: Vím. Vlasy barvy pepře, štíhlejší, uhlazenější. Je to švihák.
3. Matěj: No, tak v té nové roli bys ho nepoznala. Je z něj agent CIA.
4. Matěj: Nosí obyčejný trička s limečkem a zelený kabát, tmavý brýle. A musel změnit vzhled.
5. Helena: Změnit vzhled? A jak?
6. Matěj: Musel přibrat 17 (sedmnáct) kilogramů, nechat si narůst hustej plnovous, a přečesat vlasy dopředu
7. Helena: Aha, tak to určitě musí vypadat oplácenější a starší než ve skutečnosti.
8. Matěj: Jo, ale díky tomu vzhledu a jak hrál, získal Oscara.
9. Helena: Tak se mu to vyplatilo, vypadat hůř.
10. Matěj: Přibrat tolik kilogramů byla prý nejtěžší práce.

ENGLISH

1. Matěj: Do you know that George Clooney is said to be the sexiest man alive?
2. Helena: I know. Salt and pepper hair, slim, smooth. He looks smart.

CONT'D OVER

3. Matěj: Well, in his new role you wouldn't recognize him. He's a CIA agent.
4. Matěj: Wearing plain polo shirts and green coat, dark glasses. He had to change his looks.
5. Helena: Change his looks? How?
6. Matěj: He had to gain 17 kilograms, grow a thick beard, and brush his hair forward.
7. Helena: I see. So he must look chubby and older than he really is.
8. Matěj: Yeah, but thanks to his new look and acting, he got an Oscar.
9. Helena: So it was worth looking worse.
10. Matěj: Apparently, the hardest job was to gain the weight.

VOCABULARY

Czech	English	Class
nejvíc	most	adverb
štíhlej	slim	adjective
švihák	looking smart, dandy	noun
poznat	to recognize	perfective verb
nosit	to wear	imperfective verb
muset	to have to, must	modal verb
vypadat	to look like	imperfective verb
oplácanej	chubby	adjective
starší	older	comparison adjective
než	than	conjunction

SAMPLE SENTENCES

<p>Nejvíc se mi líbí tyhle. "I like these most."</p>	<p>Býval štíhlej, ale už není. "He used to be slim, but not anymore."</p>
<p>Tvůj táta je stále švihák. "Your dad is still a dandy."</p>	<p>Musíme poznat skutečnou příčinu. "We need to recognize the real cause."</p>
<p>O vaření nemám ponětí - nepoznám jedno koření od druhého. "I have no clue about cooking - I can't recognize one spice from the other."</p>	<p>V zimě nosíme rukavice a čepici. "In winter we wear gloves and a hat."</p>
<p>Už nikdy nenos ve třídě tu čepici. "Do not wear that hat again in class!"</p>	<p>Musím zhubnout! "I have to lose weight!"</p>
<p>Vypadáš stále mladě. "You still look young."</p>	<p>To musí vypadat upraveně. "It must look neat."</p>
<p>Posledni dobou si připadám oplacaná. "Lately I feel chubby."</p>	<p>Moji rodiče jsou již starší. "My parents are already elderly (older)."</p>
<p>Zamkni dveře než odejdeš. "Lock the door before you leave."</p>	

VOCABULARY PHRASE USAGE

Být švihák. -
"To look smart"

Být means "to be," **švihák** means "dandy" (smart dresser)

This expression is used only with men to compliment their looks if they are well dressed along with well groomed hair, if they are looking smart, tidy, fashionable etc. For example, *To je ale švihák!* "What a dandy he is!", *Navzdory svému věku je stále švihák*, "Despite his age, he's still dandy."

For example:

Náš děda býval velký švihák.
"Our grand-dad used to be a dandy."

Nepoznat někoho -
"Not to recognise (somebody)"

Poznat - is a perfective verb meaning "to recognize, identify, realize and also to "get to know somebody." **Nepoznat** is the negative form of the same verb "not to recognize, identify, etc." **Někoho** derives from the indefinite pronoun **někdo** - "somebody, someone," which changes into **někoho** - when the indefinite pronoun becomes the subject of the sentence. For example, *Hledám někoho*. "I'm looking for somebody."

The phrase **nepoznat někoho** can be used in two different contexts: one is in terms of appearance, when we don't see somebody for some time and later we do not recognize that person because their appearance has changed (getting slimmer or heavier, etc.). I.e. **Po dvaceti letech srazu naší třídy jsem nepoznal téměř nikoho**, "After a twenty year class reunion, I hadn't recognized anybody." The second context regards a person's way of thinking or changing behaviour and expresses surprise: i.e. **Já tě nepoznávám, ty jsi najednou tak uzavřený do sebe**, "I don't recognize you. Suddenly you are so introverted."

For example:

Vaše dcera je ostříhaná, ani jsem ji nepoznala.
"Your daughter had her hair cut, I didn't recognise her."

Muset vypadat -
"Must look like"

Muset means "must," **vypadat** means "to look like."

Used when expressing what somebody or something ought to look like.

E.g.

1. A: *Mamka zhubla 20 kg. B: To teď musí vypadat skvěle.*
"A: Mum lost 20kg. B: She must look great now."
2. A: *To nové umělecké dílo ve městě je dost nevkusné. B: To musí vypadat hrozně.*
"A: The new sculpture in the city is rather kitschy. B: It must look awful."

For example:

Park pro děti musí vypadat lépe než tohle.
"A park for children must look better than this."

GRAMMAR

The Focus Of This Lesson Is Describing One's Appearance

Vím. Vlasy barvy pepře, štíhlejší, uhlazenejší. Je to švihák.
"I know. Salt and pepper hair, slim, smooth. He looks smart."

Jsem vysoká a štíhlá a mám hnědé oči.
"I am tall and slim, and I have brown eyes."

Question: *Jak vypadáš?*

The question ***Jak vypadáš?*** means "What do you look like?" and we use it for both males and females.

If you want to ask a man or a woman about his or her looks, just use the question ***Jak vypadáš?***

Jak is an adverb that stands for the English "what" or "how." The other component of the question is *vypadat*, which is conjugated for the second-person singular. ***Vypadáš*** means "you look like."

Let's have a quick look at the conjugation pattern for the verb *vypadat* in the present tense and its English translation. When we conjugate it, the verb *vypadat* ("to look"/"to look like") changes its endings as follows:

Singular Form

Czech	"English"
<i>(já) vypadám</i>	"I look like"
<i>(ty) vypadáš</i>	"you look like"

<i>on vypadá</i>	"he looks like"
<i>ona vypadá</i>	"she looks like"
<i>ono vypadá</i>	"it looks like"

Plural Form

Czech	"English"
<i>(my) vypadá-me</i>	"we look like"
<i>(vy) vypadá-te</i>	"you look like"
<i>oni vypadá-jí</i>	"they look like"

So if you want to ask about the looks of a third party, here is what you could say.

For Example:

1. *Jak (on) vypadá?*
"What does he look like?"
2. *Jak (ona) vypadá?*
"What does she look like?"
3. *Jak (oni) vypadají?*
"What do they look like?"

Note that the personal pronoun in brackets is omitted in speech and is written here to help you to realise the word order. Question *Jak* + conjugated verb according to the unspoken pronoun

Describing somebody

The possible answers to the questions we have just introduced are both endless and, lucky for you, very simple. Let's use Helena's description of the actor. She describes him using certain adjectives: *štíhlý, uhlazený, vlasy barvy pepře*. The adjectives appear in the masculine forms: *štíhlý/ štíhlej* - "slim" and *uhlazený/ uhlazenej* - "neat". If Helena was describing a woman, she would be using adjectives with the appropriate feminine ending *-á*, (*štíhl-á, upraven-á*). Please note that *uhlazený* is only used with men and never with women. For a woman it is better to use *upravená* meaning "neat, tidy". The further description is about hair, *vlasy barvy pepře* - "hair of pepper colour" which, in other words, means "gray".

The compound "to have" something, such as "to have gray hair" or "to have blue

eyes" is expressed by the verb *mít*. *Mít* gets conjugated according to personal pronouns just like any other verb.

Singular Plural

<i>já mám</i>	I have	<i>my máme</i>	we have
<i>ty máš</i>	you have	<i>vy máte</i>	you have
<i>on, ona, ono má</i>	he, she, it has	<i>oni mají</i>	they have

The same rules will apply when you want to describe a third person using *být* - "to be" and conjugate.

Já jsem = "I am", *ty jsi/ seš* (colloquial) = "you are", *on/ona/ono je* = "he/she/it is", *my jsme* = "we are", *vy jste* = "you are", *oni jsou* = "they are".

Example sentences:

(On) je vysoký a mladý.
"He is tall and young."

(On) má světlé oči a tmavé vlasy.
"He has light eyes and dark hair."

(Ona) je vysoká a mladá.
"She is tall and young."

(Ona) má dlouhé, hnědé vlasy.
"She has long, brown hair,"

(My) máme tmavé oči, ale náš syn má modré.
"We have dark eyes, but our son has blue."

Now, let's expand your vocabulary a little so that you can describe yourself and your friends around you. Even though you will most likely use these adjectives in their masculine or feminine form when describing people, we still want to present them in all genders so that you can get accustomed to the endings and the way they change.

Czech			"English"
Masculine	Feminine	Neuter	
<i>nízký</i>	<i>nízká</i>	<i>nízké</i>	"short"
<i>vysoký</i>	<i>vysoký</i>	<i>vysoké</i>	"tall"

<i>starý</i>	<i>stará</i>	<i>staré</i>	"old"
<i>mladý</i>	<i>mladá</i>	<i>mladé</i>	"young"
<i>pěkný</i>	<i>pěkná</i>	<i>pěkné</i>	"pretty"
<i>ošklivý</i>	<i>ošklivé</i>	<i>ošklivé</i>	"ugly"
<i>zdravý</i>	<i>zdravá</i>	<i>zdravé</i>	"healthy"
<i>nemocný</i>	<i>nemocná</i>	<i>nemocné</i>	"sick"/"ill"
<i>hubený</i>	<i>hubená</i>	<i>hubené</i>	"slim"
<i>silný</i>	<i>silná</i>	<i>silné</i>	"fat"
<i>pohledný</i>	<i>pohledná</i>	<i>pohledné</i>	"handsome"

Modal verb *muset* "have to" in its past tense

The modal verb *muset* expresses a necessity or an obligation. Something that has to be done because the situation requires it, or because a rule or regulation requires it. It can be also on a personal level, something a person finds necessary to do, in order to achieve something. In the conversation between Matěj and Helena, Matěj is talking about an actor who had to do certain things for his new role. Matěj is talking in past tense about this actor's obligations and what he had to do with his image.....

***Musel* změnit vzhled.**

"He **had to** change his appearance."

***Musel* přibrat 15 (patnáct) kilogramů.**

"He **had to** gain 15 (fifteen) kilograms."

Conjugation of *muset* in past tense:

<i>já musel</i>	"I had to"	<i>my jsme museli</i>	"we had to"
<i>ty jsi musel</i>	"you had to"	<i>vy jste museli</i>	"you had to"
<i>on musel</i>	"he had to"		
<i>ona musela</i> <i>ono muselo</i>	"she had to" "it had to"	<i>oni museli</i>	"they had to"

Examples from the Dialogue:

Musel přibrat 17 (sedmnáct) kilogramů, nechat si narůst hustej plnovous, a přečesat vlasy dopředu

"He had to gain 17 kilograms, grow a thick beard, and brush his hair forward."

Aha, tak to určitě musí vypadat oplácanej a starší než ve skutečnosti.

"I see. So he must look chubby and older than he really is."

Sample Sentences

Pracovník v bance musí vypadat upraveně.

"A bank employee must look neat."

Všichni muži v katalogu jsou šviháci.

"All men in the catalogue look very smart (dandy). "

Ten nový střih ti sluší, omládla jsi.

"The new hair style suits you, you became younger. "

CULTURAL INSIGHT

Cinema

The recent trend in bigger cities of the Czech Republic is building chains of multiplex cinemas. Small and individual cinemas have nearly disappeared or they tend to screen less often than before. Small cinemas are usually not profitable and they are subject to subsidies. It's harder and harder for them to compete with the large multiplex cinemas that are attracting about 60% of audiences.

You could say that in order to see a box office success movie, the spectators have to go to a cinema complex, while alternative movies can be found at small cinemas or various student clubs. Nevertheless, with the development of the Internet and technology, Czech people have gotten rather used to staying at home and comfortably watching TV, playing DVDs or streaming movies on their computer.

While the Internet has become more and more popular, cinema is at a crossroads. People still like to go to the cinema and they are interested in movies, but the high prices for such an experience are putting off larger audiences who find alternative options of viewing, or other ways of spending their leisure time. According to the Millward Brown Agency, that conducted a research among Czech people and cinema going, there are about 11 million people who visit the cinema once every year, and only 20% of respondents stated that they regularly go to the cinema once a month.

Useful expression:

Letní kino.

"Open-air cinema."

LESSON NOTES

Beginner S1 #16

How Was Your Czech Vacation?

CONTENTS

2	Czech
2	English
3	Vocabulary
3	Sample Sentences
4	Vocabulary Phrase Usage
5	Grammar
15	Cultural Insight

16

CZECH

1. Matěj: Tak jak se vám líbilo minulý týden na dovolené u moře?
2. Jitka: Jo, dobrý to bylo.
3. Jitka: Byl tam krásný písek a moře bylo dost čistý.
4. Jitka: Malej Filip sbíral škeble na pláži a běhal do vody. Ani nechtěl domů.
5. Matěj: Byl poprvé u moře?
6. Jitka: Ne, už jsme byli loni, když jsme jeli do Německa.
7. Matěj: Včera jsem četl o hudebním festivalu co tam byl. Nešli jste se podívat?
8. Jitka: Nemohli jsme, neměli jsme lístky.
9. Jitka: Ale Filipovi se na pláži líbilo a hudbu bylo slyšet i tam.
10. Matěj: Tak jste měli prima dovolenou.

ENGLISH

1. Matěj: So how did you like the holiday at the seaside last week?
2. Jitka: Yeah, it was good.
3. Jitka: There was nice sand and the sea was pretty clean.

CONT'D OVER

4. Jitka: Little Filip was picking pebbles on the beach and running into the water. He didn't even want to go home.
5. Matěj: It was his first time by the sea?
6. Jitka: No, we went last year when we went to Germany.
7. Matěj: Yesterday I read about a music festival. Did you go see it?
8. Jitka: We couldn't. We had no tickets. But Filip liked it on the beach and we heard the music from even there.
9. Matěj: So you had a fine holiday.

VOCABULARY

Czech	English	Class
minulý	last	adjective
týden	week	noun
líbit se	to like, to enjoy	imperfective verb
moře	sea	noun
sbírat	to collect, to pick	imperfective verb
běhat	to run	imperfective verb
poprvé	for the first time	adverb
loni	last year	adverb
včera	yesterday	adverb
dovolená	holidays	noun

SAMPLE SENTENCES

<p>Stalo se to minulý rok. "It happened last year."</p>	<p>Počkám ještě týden. "I'll wait one more week."</p>
<p>Tohle se ti bude líbit. "You'll like this."</p>	<p>Rád jezdím k moři. "I like to go to the seaside."</p>
<p>Mám starost o moře a jeho faunu. "I'm afraid of the sea and its fauna."</p>	<p>Na podzim sbíráme v lese houby. "In the autumn, we collect mushrooms in the forest."</p>
<p>Chodím pravidelně běhat ven. "I go running outside regularly."</p>	<p>Tohle slyším poprvé. "I'm hearing this for the first time."</p>
<p>Letos je tepleji než loni. "This year is warmer than last year."</p>	<p>Dopis jsem poslala včera. "I sent the letter yesterday."</p>
<p>Včera přišla návštěva. "Yesterday we had visitors."</p>	<p>Včera bylo stašné vedro, ale dneska to není špatné. "It was very hot yesterday, but today it's not bad."</p>

Tohle je moje nejlepší dovolená.

"This is my best holiday."

VOCABULARY PHRASE USAGE

Minulý týden - "Last week"

Minulý means "past" or "last", **týden** means "week".

It is used in contexts of time: For example, in grammar **minulý čas** = "past tense", or in terms of past events or time: **minulý měsíc** = "last month", **minulý rok** = "last year", **minulý život** = "past life", etc.

For example:

1. *Obrázek z minulého století.*
"A picture from the last century."

Loni - "Last year"

"It's possible to find out." is a shorter version of **minulý rok** = "last year". **Loni** is an adverb, although it may appear as a noun.

Loni can be attached to other nouns, such as *loni v létě*, meaning "last summer" or "last year in summer", or *loni v zimě* - "last winter" or "last year in winter". **Loni** can also become an adjective by adding the suffix **-ský (loňský)**. I.e. *Loňský sníh* = "last year's snow", *loňská zima* = "last winter."

For example:

1. *Loni napadlo hodně sněhu.*
"Last winter there was much snow. "

Včera - "Yesterday"

Včera is an adverb which means "yesterday".

Včera can also have the connotation of "last" in phrases such as **včera v noci** = "yesterday at night", meaning "last night", or **včera večer** = "yesterday in the evening" or simply, "last evening."

For example:

1. *Včera jsem usnul už v devět hodin.*
"Last night, I already fell asleep at nine."

GRAMMAR

The Focus Of This Lesson Is Mastering the Past Tense of *Být* ("To Be") and the Imperfect Past Tense of Verbs.

Byl tam krásný písek a moře bylo dost čistý.
"There was a nice sand and the sea was pretty clean. "

1. Past tense *být* ("to be")

The past tense is relatively easy to form because all Czech verbs, regardless of

their irregularities in the present tense, follow the same pattern. Just like with the present tense, in the past tense we also express gender through the ending of the verb. This is not a difficult thing to master and there is a helpful strategy on how to do this. Let's have a look at the forms of the verb *být* - "to be", in the past tense, focusing on gender.

1. **Find the infinitive** form of the verb. (*Být*)
2. **For masculine gender:** take away the *-t* and replace with *-l*. You will get *byl*
3. **For feminine gender:** take away the *-t* and replace with *-la*. You will get *byla*
4. **For neuter gender:** take away the *-t* and replace with *-lo*. You will get *bylo*
5. **For plural:** take away the *-t* and replace with *-li*, You will get *byli*.

To create a simple sentence with the past tense *byl*, *byla*, *bylo*, you also need to add the auxiliary verb *být* in its conjugated form in the **first** and **second person**, singular or plural. That is:

singular	conjugation of <i>být</i>	past tense	plural	conjugation of <i>být</i>	past tense
<i>já</i> ("I")	<i>jsem</i>	<i>byl</i>	<i>my</i> ("we")	<i>jsme</i>	<i>byli</i>
<i>ty</i> ("you")	<i>jsi</i>	<i>byl</i> <i>byla</i>	<i>vy</i> ("you")	<i>jste</i>	<i>byli</i>
<i>on</i> ("he") <i>ona</i> ("she") <i>ono/ to</i> ("it")		<i>byl</i> <i>byla</i> <i>bylo</i>	<i>oni</i> ("they")		<i>byli</i>

Please note that for the third person (singular and plural), you do not need the conjugated *být* (*je*="is", *jsou*="are") when creating the past tense. You only say, for example, *on byl* ="he was", *oni byli* ="they were".

Sample sentences:

Singular

1. *Já jsem **byl** na pláži.*
"I was on the beach."

*Já jsem **byla** na pláži.*
"I was on the beach."
2. *Ty jsi **byl** na pláži.*
"You were on the beach."

*Ty jsi **byla** na pláži.*
"You were on the beach."
3. *On **byl** na pláži*
"You were on the beach."

*Ona **byla** na pláži.*
"You were on the beach."

*Ono/ to **bylo** na pláži.*
"You were on the beach."

Plural

1. *My jsme **byli** na pláži.*
"We were on the beach."
2. *Vy jste **byli** na pláži.*
"You were on the beach."

*Vy jste **byl/ byla** na pláži.*
"You were on the beach." (formal speech)
3. *Oni **byli** na pláži.*
"They were on the beach."

You can find the past tense in the lesson dialogue where Matěj and Jitka talk about Jitka's holiday by the sea. There are these sentences:

- *Jo, dobrý to **bylo**.*
"yeah, it was good."

The subject is *to* ("it"), thus the pattern for the neuter gender.

- **Byl tam krásný písek a moře bylo dost čistý.**
"There was a nice sand and the sea was pretty clean."

The subjects are: 1) *písek* ("sand") masculine noun, thus the pattern for the masculine gender. 2) *moře* ("sea"), a neuter gender, thus pattern for the neuter gender.

- *Ne, už jsme byli loni, když jsme jeli do Německa.*
"No, we went last year when we went to Germany."

The subject is *my* ("we"), thus the pattern for the plural.

Please note the below changes in spoken Czech language:

ty jsi becomes **tys**
Tys byl u moře. = "You were by the sea."

my jsme becomes **my sme**
Mysme byli u moře. = "We were by the sea."

vy jste become **vyste**
Vyste byli u moře. = "You were by the sea."

2. Past tense of imperfective verbs

The past tense in Czech language is used for all three past tenses in English (did, was doing, has done). In order to distinguish simple past and past continuous, Czechs employ two ways of creating the past tense: using perfective and imperfective verbs. The past perfect indicates that the action was finished whilst imperfect past indicates the action was continuing over time. Here we will have a look at the imperfect past tense of some verbs.

In terms of verb gender, the basic pattern is the same as the above for the verb *být*.

Take away the *t* from the infinitive verb and replace with *l* for masculine, *la* for feminine, *lo* for neuter, and *li* for plural. Let's try an example using the verb **dělat** ("to do").

M *on dělal* "he was doing"

F *ona dělala* "she was doing"

N *ono/ to dělalo* "it was doing"

Plural *my, vy, oni dělali* "we, you, they were doing"

Dělat ("to do")

<i>já jsem dělal/la</i>	I was doing	<i>my jsme/ mysme dělali</i>	we were doing
<i>ty jsi/ tys dělal/la</i>	you were doing	<i>vy jste/ vyste dělali</i>	you were doing
<i>on dělal ona dělala ono/to dělalo</i>	he was doing she was doing it was doing	<i>oni dělali</i>	they were doing

číst (to read")

<i>já jsem četl/ la</i>	I was reading	<i>my jsme/ my sme četli</i>	we were reading
<i>ty jsi/tys četl/la</i>	you were reading	<i>vy jste/ vyste četli</i>	you were reading
<i>on četl ona četla ono/ to četlo</i>	he was reading she was reading it was reading	<i>oni četli</i>	they were reading

In the lesson dialogue, you can see the same formation in these sentences:

- *Malej Filip sbíral škeble na pláži a běhal do vody.*
"Little Philip was picking pebbles on the beach and running into the water."

The imperfective verbs here are *sbírat* ("to collect/ collecting") and *běhat* ("to run/ to be running").

Because the subject of the verb is Filip, the past tense must follow the masculine gender pattern. *sbírat*

- *Včera jsem četl o hudebním festivalu co tam byl.*
"Yesterday I was reading about a music festival there was."

The imperfective verb here is *číst* ("to read/ reading") and the subject is *já* ("I"). Since it's Matěj who is speaking and Matěj is a male, the past tense pattern must follow the masculine gender.

číst

*long vowels of monosyllable verbs become shorter in past tense

Vowels shortening in past tense

<i>á = a</i>	<i>lhát/lhal</i> ("lied"), <i>prát/pral</i> ("washed"), <i>dát/dal</i> ("gave")
<i>é = e</i>	<i>vézt/vezl</i> ("carried by vehicle"), <i>nést/nesl</i> ("carried by hand"), <i>plést/pletl</i> ("mistook/ mixed").
<i>í = ě/ e</i>	<i>číst/četl</i> ("read"), <i>jíst/jedl</i> ("ate"), <i>mít/měl</i> ("had"), <i>chtít/chtěl</i> ("wanted").
<i>í = i</i>	<i>pít/pil</i> ("drunk"), <i>snít/snil</i> ("dreamt"), <i>šít/šil</i> ("sew").
<i>out = u</i>	<i>plout/plul</i> ("sailed"), <i>dout/dul</i> ("blew"), <i>ohnout/ohnul</i> ("bent"), <i>zvyknout/zvyknul</i> ("got used to").
<i>ů = o</i>	<i>růst/rostl</i> ("grew")
<i>ý = y</i>	<i>být/byl</i> ("was"), <i>rýt/ryl</i> ("engraved"), <i>mýt/myl</i> ("washed/cleaned"),

Irregular:

Jít ("to go on foot")

<i>m já jsem šel f já jsem šla</i>	"I went on foot"	<i>my jsme šli</i>	"we went on foot"
<i>m ty jsi šel f ty jsi šla</i>	"you went on foot"	<i>vy jste šli</i>	"you went on foot"
<i>m on šel f ona šla</i>	"he went on foot" "she went on foot"	<i>oni šli</i>	"they went on foot"

Distinction of *i* and *y* at the end of verbs

In written Czech language it is important to distinguish *i* and *y* at the end of verbs in their past tense.

Ending with *,-i*

- **for masculine animate plural**

muži = dělali, běhali, sbírali, čekali, četli, hráli, psali.

"men were = doing, running, picking, waiting, reading, playing, writing."

- **for general plural** (mixed group of women and men)

oni = dělali, běhali, sbírali, čekali, četli, hráli, psali

"they were = doing, running, picking, waiting, reading, playing, writing."

Ending with *,-y*

- **for masculine inanimate plural**

vlaky čekaly = "trains were waiting", *stroje pracovaly* = "machines were working", *zvony zněly* = "bells were ringing".

- **for feminine plural and children**

ženy, děti = *dělaly, běhaly, sbíraly, čekaly, četly, hrály, psaly*.

"women, children were = doing, running, picking, waiting, reading, playing, writing."

3. Locative case

The locative (6th) case is always used after a preposition. It is used when we need to describe location of something or someone, or when we're thinking or talking about someone or something.

In English, the Czech locative case corresponds to these prepositions:

1. "in" = **v/ ve** (talking about towns, villages, countries, enclosed and inside places). Asking the question *kde?* ("where?")
2. "on/ at" = **na** (talking about open spaces, surfaces, activities, actions, some public institutions). Asking the question *kde?* ("Where?")
3. "around/ across" = **po** (talking about walking or travelling around places). Asking the question *kde?* ("where?")
4. "about" = **o** (talking about an object, somebody or something). Asking the question *O kom, o čem??* ("About who/ about what?")

Examples:

1. *V Praze* = "in Praha", *V Jihlavě* = "in Jihlava", *V Africe* = "in Africa", *v hospodě* = "in a pub", *v nemocnici* = "in a hospital".
2. *Na Karlově mostě* = "on Charles Bridge", *na podlaze* = "on the floor", *na koncertě* = "at a concert", *na čundru* = "hiking, tramping", *na poště* = "at the post office", *na ambasádě* = "at the embassy."

3. *Po Praze* = "around Praha", *po světě* = "across the world", *po moři* = "across the sea", *po vesnici* = "around the village."
4. *O životě* = "about life", *o manželovi* = "about husband", *o lidech* = "about people", *o vikendu* = "about weekend", *o prázdninách* = "about holidays".

In terms of the locative case and prepositions, you can find the use of locative case in the dialogue sentences where Matěj is asking Jitka about their holidays by the sea and Jitka describes what they did:

- *Tak jak se vám líbilo minulý týden na dovolené u moře?*
- *Malej Filip sbíral škeble na pláži a běhal do vody.*
- *Včera jsem četl o hudebním festivalu co tam byl. Nešli jste se podívat?*

How to figure out the noun ending in locative case

To be able to understand what ending the noun in locative case will have, you can follow this guide of last consonant rule. This table provides a certain help, although there will be exceptions for some nouns.

Nouns and their last consonant	Noun will end with	Examples
Masculine inanimate & Neutral nouns ending by these hard consonants: <i>h, ch, k, r, g.</i>	<i>,-u</i>	<i>Mi</i> ("breath") <i>dech/ dechu</i> <i>Mi</i> ("rucksack") <i>batoh/ batohu</i>
International words		<i>N</i> ("gymnasium") <i>gymnázium/ gymnáziu</i>
masculine nouns with other consonants	<i>,-ovi/u, ovi/ i</i>	<i>M</i> ("dog") <i>pes/ psovi/ psu</i> <i>Mi</i> ("table") <i>stůl/ stolu</i> <i>M</i> ("driver") <i>řidič/ řidičovi</i> <i>Mi</i> ("festival") <i>festival/ festivalu</i> <i>M</i> ("dentist") <i>zubař/ zubaři/ovi</i>

After soft consonants: <i>ž, š, č, ř, d', t', ň, c, j</i>	<i>,-i</i>	<i>F ("Vienna") Vídeň/ Vídňi</i> <i>F ("beach") pláž/ pláži</i> <i>Mi ("pot") hrnec/ hrnci</i>
Feminine and Neutral nouns ending with <i>,-e</i> or a consonant	<i>,-i</i>	<i>F ("chair") židle/ židli</i> <i>N ("field") pole/ poli</i>
After all other consonants	<i>,-e/ ě</i> <i>,-é</i>	<i>M ("Egypt") Egypt/ Egyptě</i> <i>F ("garden") zahrada/ zahradě</i> <i>N ("car") auto/ autě</i> <i>F ("holiday") dovolená/ dovolené</i>

Language Expansion

If you're not interested in learning the rules of forming the locative case, you can always memorize locative forms alongside with the dictionary forms of the most commonly used nouns. Here you will find a list of nouns that refer to places in their nominative form, and corresponding locative form, together with appropriate prepositions.

Czech nominative	English	Czech locative	English
<i>banka</i>	"bank"	<i>v bance</i>	"in the bank"
<i>kancelář</i>	"office"	<i>v kanceláři</i>	"in/at the office"
<i>budova</i>	"building"	<i>v budově</i>	"in the building"
<i>dům</i>	"house, home"	<i>v domě</i>	"in the house/at home"
<i>stanice</i>	"station"	<i>na stanici</i>	"at the train station"
<i>hotel</i>	"hotel"	<i>v hotelu</i>	"in/at the hotel"
<i>kavárna</i>	"café"	<i>v kavárně</i>	"in a café"
<i>zastávka (autobusu)</i>	"bus stop"	<i>na zastávce autobusu</i>	"at a bus stop"

<i>restaurace</i>	"restaurant"	<i>v restauraci</i>	"in the restaurant"
<i>krám</i>	"shop, store"	<i>v krámě</i>	"in the store"
<i>nemocnice</i>	"hospital"	<i>v nemocnici</i>	"in the hospital"
<i>škola</i>	"school"	<i>ve škole</i>	"in/at school"
<i>ulice</i>	"street"	<i>na ulici</i>	"on the street"
<i>universita</i>	"university"	<i>na universitě</i>	"at the university"

Examples from the dialogue:

Ne, už jsme byli loni, když jsme jeli do Německa.

"No, we went last year when we went to Germany."

Včera jsem četl o hudebním festivalu co tam byl. Nešli jste se podívat?

"Yesterday I read about a music festival there was. Did you go to see it?"

Sample Sentences

1. *Včera jsem si byl zaběhat na pláži.*
"Yesterday I was running on the beach."
2. *Byli jsme ubytovaní v hotelu.*
"We were accommodated at a hotel."
3. *O víkendu jsme byli na lodi.*
"On the weekend we were on a boat."

CULTURAL INSIGHT

Summer Holidays

School year in the Czech Republic starts from the 1st of September and ends on the last day of June. In the mean time, there are several holidays for children: 3 days in Autumn, 10 days in Winter, 7 days in the Spring, and the Summer holidays. The main holiday is the summer and lasts for two months, from the 1st of July until the end of August. The children's main holiday is therefore used by adults for their own holidays too; especially the first three weeks in July when many people travel

domestically or abroad.

For families with children, very popular places are in the south and central Czech Republic, where they can rent a cottage and spend time in nature. There are many activities available for children at these destinations. One of the most popular destinations is Šumava, which is one of the oldest low mountain areas with a National Park and beautiful nature. Another one is Lipno, a water dam constructed alongside the largest river, Vltava, where there is a big attraction park, beautiful beaches, long cycling paths that go on for miles, and one of the biggest wellness and fitness centre in the Czech Republic and much more.

Useful expression

Rodinná dovolená.
"Family holidays."

LESSON NOTES

Beginner S1 #17

Sending a Package in the Czech Republic

CONTENTS

2	Czech
2	English
3	Vocabulary
4	Sample Sentences
4	Vocabulary Phrase Usage
5	Grammar
13	Cultural Insight

17

CZECH

1. Matěj: Dobrý den, potřebuju poslat tenhle balík do Český Republiky, letecky.
2. Zaměstnankyně: Ten váží 4 (čtyři) kilogramy, to bude 1000 (tisíc) korun.
3. Matěj: Aha, tak to určitě ne. Nejde to levněji?
4. Zaměstnankyně: Levně to můžete poslat lodí.
5. Matěj: A jak dlouho to trvá?
6. Zaměstnankyně: Až 2 (dva) měsíce.
7. Matěj: Jejda, to taky ne. To je moc dlouho.
8. Zaměstnankyně: Letecky to jde rychle a balíky do 2 (dvou) kilogramů stojí míň.
9. Matěj: Aha, takže když pošlu letecky dva malé balíky, stojí to míň než jeden.
10. Zaměstnankyně: Ano, přesně tak.
11. Matěj: Tak jo, dobře jste mi poradila. Děkuju.

ENGLISH

1. Matěj: Hello, I need to send a package to the Czech Republic by air.
2. Employee (F): This weighs 4 kilograms. It will be 1000 (thousand) crowns.

CONT'D OVER

3. Matěj: Wow, I guess not. Isn't there a cheaper way?
4. Employee (F): You can send it cheaper by boat.
5. Matěj: And how long does it take?
6. Employee (F): Up to 2 (two) months.
7. Matěj: Oops, this one neither. That's too long.
8. Employee (F): By air it's fast and a package up to 2 (two) kilograms costs less.
9. Matěj: I see. So if I send 2 (two) small packages by air, it costs less than one.
10. Employee (F): Yes, exactly.
11. Matěj: You advised me well. Thank you.

VOCABULARY

Czech	English	Class
poslat	to send	verb
letecky	by air	adverb
určitě	definitely, surely	adverb
levnější	cheaper	adjective
levněji	cheaply	adverb
dlouho	long time, long	adverb
moc	very much, a lot	adverb
rychle	fast, quick	adverb

míň	less	adverb
dobře	well	adjective

SAMPLE SENTENCES

<p>Chci poslat tohle, prosím. "I want to send this, please."</p>	<p>Na ostrov se dostanete letecky nebo lodí. "You can go to the island by plane or by boat."</p>
<p>To se určitě vyplatí. "It will surely pay off."</p>	<p>Tyhle boty jsou levnější. "These shoes are cheaper."</p>
<p>Jinde to můžu koupit levněji "I can buy this cheaply at another place."</p>	<p>Jak dlouho budem čekat? "How long will we wait?"</p>
<p>Tady je to moc hlučné. "It's too noisy here."</p>	<p>Chci se rychle vrátit. "I want to make a quick return."</p>
<p>Dnes je tu míň lidí. "There are less people today."</p>	<p>Mějte se tu dobře. "Keep well here."</p>
<p>Jde ti to dobře. "You are doing very well."</p>	

VOCABULARY PHRASE USAGE

To určitě ne.... - "Definitely not"

To means "this" or "that," **určitě** means "definitely, surely," and **ne** means "no."

This phrase expresses a strong disagreement or strong denial. It can be used on a daily basis. For example: *A: Po Vezmeš si na to půjčku? B: To určitě ne.* = "A: Will

you take a loan for this? B: definitely not."

For example:

1. *B nebo C, určitě ne A.*
"B or C, definitely not A."

Taky ne... - "Also not/neither"

Taky means "too, also," and **ne** is "no, not."

This phrase expresses a mild negation or disagreement. It can be used when talking about an option; for example: A: *Tenhle se ti líbí?* B: *ne, ten taky ne.* ="A: Do you like this one? B: No, this one neither/also not.," OR when negating something: *101 věcí, které bys měl vědět - nebo taky ne.* ="101 things you should know, or maybe not."

For example:

1. *Ty za to nemůžeš, ale já taky ne.*
"It's not your fault, but also not mine. "

Tak jo... - "Alright then"

Tak means "well, alright, OK," **jo** is the colloquial expression for **ano** ("yes").

This expression is used very often in daily speech. It expresses agreement with the other speaker. For example: A: *Tak tam pojed' se mnou.* B: *Tak jo.* =A: "Well, come with me then. B: Alright then."

For example:

1. *Tak jo, jdeme na to.*
"Alright then, let's do it. "

GRAMMAR

The Focus Of This Lesson Is Developing Smooth Communication Skills - Adverbs

Dobrý den, potřebuju poslat tenhle balík do Český Republiky, letecky.
"Hello, I need to send a package to the Czech Republic by air."

Adverb Creation

Most Czech adverbs are created from adjectives and this is done by changing the last vowel of the adjective into **,-ě** or **,-e**. An example from the lesson dialogue is with the adverb *levně* ("cheaply").

i.e. adjective / adverb

levný / levně
"cheap / cheaply"

strašný / strašně
"terrible / terribly"

hloupý / hloupě
"stupid / stupidly"

svižný / svižně
"brisk / briskly"

skvělý / skvěle
"brilliant / brilliantly"

*There are, however, adverbs, that will have the regular ending **,-sky**, or **,-cky**. They are adverbs created from adjectives that end with **-ský**, or **-cký**.*

Take, for example, the adjective *letecký* ("aerial") and adverb *letecky* ("by air") which you can find in the lesson dialogue at the post office. Other examples:

adjective / adverb

letecký / letecky
"aerial / by air"

umělecký / umělecky
"artistic / artistically"

český / česky
"Czech / in Czech"

ruský / rusky
"Russian / in Russian"

Adverbs Categories

Speaking of adverbs, we can also divide them into categories by degree/level, time and place, manner, placement etc. There are 5 different categories. Starting from the first one:

1) Adverbs of Manner

Adverbs of manner provide information on how someone does something and answers the question *jak?* ("how?"). They are placed after the verb or at the end of the sentence. Adverbs of manner are created from adjectives by changing the last vowel into **,-ě**, or **,-e**, as mentioned above. For example:

1. *Honza řídí **opatrně**.*
"Honza drives **carefully**."
2. *Učitelka mluví **rychle**.*
"The teacher speaks **quickly**."
3. *Lidé se chovají **slušně**.*
"People are behaving **politely**."
4. *Sbor zpívá **falešně**.*
"The choir sings **off key**."
5. *Pošlete to **levně** lodí.*
"Send send it **cheaply** by boat."

2) Adverbs of Time and Place

Adverbs of time and place provide information on when or where something happens. Adverbs of time and place are placed after the verb or at the end of the sentence. For example:

Time:

*Sejdeme se **zítra**.*
"We'll meet **tomorrow**."

*Chtěl bych odejít už **ted'**.*
"I'd like to leave already now."

*Poslal jsem to **včera**.*
"I sent it **yesterday**."

*Sešli se jen **krátce**.*
"They met only **briefly**."

Place:

*Počkej na nás **venku**.*
"Wait for us **outside**."

Za chvíli jsem **tady**.
"I'll be **here** in a short while."

Ještě nebyli **doma**.
"They were not **at home** yet."

Adverbs of Time and Place Ending with **-o**

dlouho
"long/ for a long time"

dávno
"long time ago"

daleko
"far away"

blízko
"nearby"

vysoko
"high"

Example sentences:

1. *To je moc **dlouho**.*
"That is too **long**."
2. *To už bylo **dávno**.*
"That was **long time ago**."
3. *Bydlím odsud **daleko**.*
"I live quite **far away** from here."
4. *Letadlo vzlétlo **vysoko**.*
"The plane took off **high**."

3) Adverbs of Frequency

Adverbs of frequency provide information on how often something happens. For example:

- *často*
"often"

1. **Často** nebývám doma.
"I'm **often** not at home."
 - *občas*
"sometimes"

1. *Ráno* **občas** zaspím.
"I **sometimes** oversleep in the morning."
 - *většinou*
"usually"

1. *Víkendy* mám **většinou** volné.
"I **usually** have weekends free."
 - *stále*
"always"

1. **Stále** u sebe nosím deštník.
"I **always** carry an umbrella on me."
 - *někdy*
"sometimes"

1. *Chodím pěšky, ale* **někdy** jedu autem.
"I go on foot, but **sometimes** I go by car."
 - *nikdy*
"never"

1. *Černou barvu* jsem **nikdy** neměl rád.
"I **never** liked black colour."
 - *pravidelně*
"regularly"

1. Chodíme **pravidelně** na procházky.
"We **regularly** go for a walk."

4) Adverbs of Degree

Adverbs of degree provide information concerning how much of something is done, the intensity or quality. For example the sentence form the lesson dialogue: *To je **moc** dlouho.* "That's **too** long." Other adverbs of degree:

- *hodně*
"a lot"

1. *Je to **hodně** namáhavé.*
"It's demanding **a lot**."

- *strašně*
"terribly"

1. ***Strašně*** nepraktická věc.
"**Terribly** impractical thing."

- *velmi*
"very much, extremely"

1. *Bylo to **velmi** dojemné.*
"It was **extremely** touching."

- *ohromně*
"immensely"

1. ***Ohromně*** mi to pomáhá.
"This is helping me **immensely**."

- *snadno*
"easily"

1. *Najdeš to úplně **snadno**.*
"You can find it very **easily**."

- *docela*
"quite"

1. *Tak jsi se **docela** zapotil.*
"You got **quite** sweaty."

- *příliš*
"too much"

1. *Tohle je **příliš** velké.*
"This is **too** big."

5) Adverbs of Comment

Adverbs of comment provide a comment, or opinion about a situation. Adverbs of comment are placed at the beginning of a sentence. For example:

- *naštěstí*
"fortunately, luckily"

1. ***Naštěstí** zbývalo dost sedadel.*
"**Fortunately**, enough seats were left."

- *bláznivě*
"foolishly"

1. ***Bláznivě** jsem tomu věřil.*
"**Foolishly**, I believed it."

- *přírozeně*
"naturally"

1. **Přirozeně** jsem se toho zděsil.
"Naturally, I got horrified by that."

Important Exceptions to Adverb Placement

Some adverbs are placed at the beginning of a sentence to provide more emphasis. For example:

- *ted'*
"now"

1. **Ted'** mi říkáš, že nepřijdeš!
"Now you tell me you won't come!"

Adverbs of frequency are placed after the verb when used as the main verb of the sentence. For example:

- *často*
"often"

1. *Jana chodí často pozdě do práce.*
"Jana goes often late to work."

Some adverbs of frequency ("sometimes, usually, normally") are also placed at the beginning of the sentence for emphasis. For example:

- *někdy*
"sometimes"

1. **Někdy** mě to baví.
"Sometimes I enjoy it."

- *obvykle*
"usually"

1. **Obvykle** se na to nedívám.
"Usually I don't watch this."

Examples from the dialogue:

1. *Aha, tak to určitě ne. Nejde to levněji?*
"Wow, I guess not. Isn't there a cheaper way?"
2. *Aha, takže když pošlu letecky dva malé balíky, stojí to míň než jeden.*
"I see. So if I send 2(two) small packages by air, it costs less than one."

Sample Sentences

1. *Jedu pracovně na týden pryč.*
"I'm going away for a week on business terms."
2. *Postupně jsem si na to zvykl.*
"Gradually, I became used to it. "
3. *Je to pro mě strašně důležitý.*
"It's very important for me. "

CULTURAL INSIGHT

Post Office

At the start of the independence of the Czech Republic in the early 1990s, it was decided that the post office would be a state-owned enterprise. The prior joint post office and telecommunications became two different institutions and managements. The logo of the Czech Post Office is a postal trumpet, often in blue with a yellow background. Nowadays, the post office offers all sorts of different services, such as domestic and international shipping and the receiving of letters, parcels, and money orders, redelivery and redirecting. It also offers saving accounts and banking, selling at post offices and e-shops, advertising mail or printed materials, customs clearance, certification authority, and eGovernment services.

The Czech Post Office offers the following products: packaging materials, newspapers and magazines, stationary, film and music CDs/DVDs, tickets and passes for certain regional transport companies, and toys. It's also the place to buy highway stickers for cars, revenue stamps, top-up cards and charging services for your mobile phone.

Rivals of the Czech Post Office are mainly private companies that offer shipping and delivery services. Depending on the product, they may offer a cheaper price or

better time arrangement and flexibility - especially for larger items.

Useful expression

Česká pošta.

"Czech Post Office."

LESSON NOTES

Beginner S1 #18

What's Your Big Czech Secret?

CONTENTS

- 2 Czech
- 2 English
- 3 Vocabulary
- 3 Sample Sentences
- 4 Vocabulary Phrase Usage
- 5 Grammar
- 9 Cultural Insight

18

CZECH

1. Jitka: Jé, Matěji, tebe jsem dlouho neviděla. Ty ses odstěhoval?
2. Matěj: Jé, ahoj. Ne, byl jsem dlouho pryč. Nejdřív v Nizozemí, potom chvíli v Norsku a teď jsem zase tady.
3. Jitka: Aha. A co jsi dělal v Nizozemí?
4. Matěj: Studoval jsem a pak pracoval.
5. Jitka: To je super. A proč jsi šel do Norska?
6. Matěj: No, jak to říct...potkal jsem holku.
7. Jitka: Aha, ona je Norka?
8. Matěj: Jo, Norka. Teď bydlíme tady.
9. Jitka: Jo? A jak jste se poznali?
10. Matěj: Noo....víš co....To je tajemství.

ENGLISH

1. Jitka: Hey, Matěj. Haven't seen you in a long time. Have you moved out?
2. Matěj: Hey, hi. No, I was away for a long time. First in the Netherlands, then in Norway for a while, and now I'm back.
3. Jitka: I see. What did you do in the Netherlands?

CONT'D OVER

4. Matěj: I was working and studying.
5. Jitka: That's great. And why did you go to Norway?
6. Matěj: Well, how should I say it...I met a girl.
7. Jitka: I see. She is Norwegian?
8. Matěj: Yep, Norwegian. We live here now.
9. Jitka: Really? And how did you meet?
10. Matěj: Well...you know...That's a secret.

VOCABULARY

Czech	English	Class
odstěhovat	to move away	perfective verb
pryč	away, out of, gone	adverb
nejdřív	first, firstly	adverb
potom	then, after that, thereafter	adverb
ted'	now	adverb
dělat	to do, to make	imperfective verb
říct	to say, to tell	verb
poznat se	to get to know, to meet	perfective verb
vědět	to know, to be aware	imperfective verb
tajemství	secret	noun

SAMPLE SENTENCES

<p>Museli se odsud odstěhovat. "They had to move out of here."</p>	<p>Budu teď týden pryč. "I'll be away for a week now."</p>
<p>Nejdřív se tu porozhlédnu. "First I'll have a look around here."</p>	<p>Čaj a zákusek si dáme potom. "We'll get tea and dessert after that."</p>
<p>Ted' se nedívej. "Don't look now."</p>	<p>Ted' mě prosím poslouchejte. "Now, please listen to me."</p>
<p>Ted' už jdi! "Now off you go!"</p>	<p>Co se dá dělat. "What can be done."</p>
<p>Už nic nebudu říkat. "I won't say anything then."</p>	<p>Řeknu ti, co se stane, jestli se nepřestaneš smát. "I could tell what was happening from your grin."</p>
<p>Řekněte mi jméno. "Tell me your name."</p>	<p>Poznala jsem ho na plovárně. "I got to know him at the swimming pool."</p>
<p>Já to všechno vim. "I know it all."</p>	<p>Bude to naše tajemství. "It'll be our secret."</p>

VOCABULARY PHRASE USAGE

Nejdřív... potom... - "First... then..."

Nejdřív - means "first/ firstly", **potom** - means "after that, later".

Nejdřív and **Potom** are part of the sequential adverbs group. Sequencing helps to differentiate the time of when something is happening or happened and in what order. These adverbs are used at the beginning of a sentence or in sentence clauses. I.e. **Nejdřív se najím, pak si přečtu knížku a potom půjdu spát.**

= "First I'll eat, then read a book and then I'll go to sleep."

For example:

1. *Nejdřív si umyj ruce, pak teprve jez.*
"First wash your hands, only then eat. "

Jak to říct... - "How should I say..." (Lit. How to say it..)

Jak - means "how", **to** - means "it, that", **říct** - means "say".

A phrase expressing a hesitation when giving a reply. Also interchangeable with **Jak to vysvětlit...** - "How to explain this...". I.e. **Jak to vysvětlit, zkrátka se na to necítím.** = "How to explain it, I simply don't feel ready yet."

For example:

1. *No, jak to jen říct, nehodí se to.*
"Well, how to say it, it's not suitable. "

Víš co... - "You know...."

Víš ("you know") - is the imperative form of the verb **vědět** "to know", and **co** - means "what".

This is a frequently used phrase in day-to-day speech. Equivalent to the English "you know"...I.e. **Víš co, zrovna dneska se mi nechce.** "You know, right now I don't feel like it."

For example:

1. *No, víš co, nebavilo mě to.*
"Well, you know, I wasn't into it. "

GRAMMAR

The Focus Of This Lesson Is Exploring the Past - Past Tense Review and Sequential Adverbs

Jé, Matěji, tebe jsem dlouho neviděla. Ty ses odstěhoval?

"Hey, Matěji, haven't seen you in a long time. Have you moved out?"

Past tense review

As mentioned in lesson 16, with most Czech verbs forming past tense has a regular pattern.

This one past tense form corresponds to all three past tenses in English, "did, was doing, have done".

- For verbs with infinitive ending in **,-at**,

You take away the last letter of the verb infinitive and replace with **l**, or, **la**, or **lo** according to gender.

i.e.

Odstěhovat "to move away" = *odstěhoval*, *odstěhovala*, *odstěhovalo*

Pracovat "to work" = *pracoval*, *pracovala*, *pracovalo*

Studovat "to study" = *studoval*, *studovala*, *studovalo*

In the lesson dialogue, Matěj is replying to Jitka that he was working and studying in Norway.

- *(Já) Studoval jsem a pak pracoval.*

(personal pronoun is omitted in the spoken form, thus the word order will be *Studoval jsem* and not *Jsem studoval.*)

- For verbs with infinitive ending in **,-nout**

Replace **,-nout** with **,-nul** after a vowel.

Replace **,-nout** with **,-l** after a consonant.

i.e.

mi/nout "to miss, pass" *minul*, *minula*, *minulo*

zvlád/nout "to manage" *zvládl*, *zvládla*, *zvládlo*

For Plural Form, the ending of the verb will be:

Masculine animate **,-li**

Masculine inanimate and feminine **,-ly**

Neutral **,-la** (but in spoken form **,-ly**)

i.e.

Masc. animate *Chlapi odstěhovali nábytek.* "Men moved furniture away."

Masc. inanimate *Stroje dělaly rámus.* "Machines were noisy."

Feminine *Holky studovaly v Norsku.* "Girls studied in Norway."

Neuter *Auta jezdila/ly dokola.* "Cars drove in circles."

Irregular Verbs:

One of the best examples of an irregular verb that changes its form in past tense to something quite different is: *jít* - "to go"

<i>já jsem šel</i> (masc)	I went	<i>my jsme šli</i>	we, you went
<i>já jsem šla</i> (fem)	I went	<i>vy jste šli</i>	
<i>on šel</i>			
<i>ona šla</i>	he/she/it went	<i>oni šli</i>	they went
<i>ono šlo</i>			

Example from the lesson dialogue:

- *Proč jsi šel do Norska?*
"Why **did you go** to Norway?"

Please note the word order change:

Statement form:

Šel jsi do Norska.

"You went to Norway."

Question form:

Proč jsi šel do Norska?

"Why did you go to Norway?"

In question sentences, the question word has to come first: *Proč (ty) jsi šel do Norska?*

Sequential Adverbs

Sequential adverbs, such as **nejdřív** - "first", **potom** - "after that, then", **pak** -

"after, later", **ted'** - "now", **mezitím** - "in the meantime", **prvně** - "first of all", **poprvé** - "for the first time", **podruhé** - "next, for the second time", **předtím** - "previously", **najednou** - "suddenly", **nakonec** - "finally", etc. come at the beginning of the sentence, or they mark the sequence of time in the middle of the sentence. Such sequencing you can see in the lesson dialogue in these sentences:

Nejdřív v Nizozemí, **potom** chvíli v Norsku a **ted'** jsem zase tady.

"**First** in Holland, **then** for a while Norway and **now** I am again here."

Ted' bydlíme tady.

"**Now** we live here."

Other sample sentences with sequencing:

1. **Nejdřív** se najíme, **potom** půjdem ven.
"**First** we'll eat, **after that** we'll go out."
2. **Nejdřív** to odmítáš, **ted'** to chceš.
"**First** you refuse it, **now** you want it."
3. **Prvně** se tu podepište, **pak** se prosím posad'te.
"**First of all**, sign it here, **then** sit down please."
4. **Nejdřív** si odlož, **mezitím** to najdu.
"**First** take your coat off, **meanwhile** I'll find it."
5. **Poprvé** jsme tam byli loni, **podruhé** letos.
"**For the first** time we were there last year, **for the second** time this year."
6. **Předtím** jsi ho kritizoval, **najednou** se ho zastáváš.
"**Previously** you criticized him, **suddenly** you defend him."
7. **Nejdřív** nasyp mouku, **pak** přidej cukr, **mezitím** ušlehej vejce, **nakonec** to smíchej.
"**First** put flour in, **then** add sugar, **meanwhile** beat the egg, **finally** mix it together."

Some sequential adverbs can come at the end of the sentence:

1. **Ted'** nemůžu, zavolej mi **pak/ později**.
"Now I can't, call me **later**."

Examples from the dialogue:

Jé, ahoj. Ne, byl jsem dlouho pryč. Nejdřív v Nizozemí, potom chvíli v Norsku a teď jsem zase tady.

"Hey, hi. No, I was away for a long time. First, in Netherlands, then in Norway for a while, and now I'm back."

Jo, Norka. Ted' bydlíme tady.

"Yep, Norwegian. We live here now. "

Sample Sentences

1. *Nejdřív pršelo, ale pak se vyjasnilo.*
"First it was raining, but then it brightened up."
2. *Pracoval jsem a poslouchal rádio.*
"I was working and listening to the radio."
3. *Bydleli jsme nejdřív v Praze, a pak se odstěhovali.*
"We lived in Prague first, and then we moved away."

CULTURAL INSIGHT

Travelling Abroad

After the Velvet Revolution in 1989, when the borders opened and traveling abroad to the Western countries became possible, there was a big boom of people wanting to travel. There were about 200,000 Czech people who left to experience elsewhere. The largest number of Czech citizens went to the USA, around 1.7 million, second target was Canada, followed by Austria, Germany, Spain, Australia, Ireland and Greece

Now, there are about 2.2 million people of Czech origin living abroad. Many of them also in the UK. According to a study by a "return project" that is aiming to support Czechs who wish to return from abroad, Czech nationals wish to return to their home country more than any other nationality. They come back mainly for their families and friends. About 60% of returnees in the study had high education and they were between 25-45 years of age.

Those who participated in the research said that they often watched what was going on in their homeland, and kept in touch with people in the Czech Republic by phone, text messages, or via skype. A large number of them were planning to return.

Useful expression:

Návrat ze zahraničí.
"Return from abroad."

LESSON NOTES

Beginner S1 #19

Planning a Wedding in the Czech Republic

CONTENTS

2	Czech
2	English
3	Vocabulary
4	Sample Sentences
4	Vocabulary Phrase Usage
6	Grammar
10	Cultural Insight

19

CZECH

1. Matěj: Už musíme plánovat tu svatbu. Kolik chceš lidí?
2. Helena: Určitě nechci hodně lidí. Stačí malá svatba.
3. Helena: Chci tam mít hlavně rodinu a úplně nejbližší známý.
4. Helena: Nechceš zařídit hudbu? Máš tolik známých hudebníků.
5. Matěj: Jo, to můžu. Stejně chci pozvat kluky z kapely.
6. Helena: Víš, představuju si to trochu retro styl.
7. Helena: Na stůl gramofonový desky, a hudbu z padesátých let.
8. Matěj: Můj sen je jet na svatbu v Chevroletu. Pronajmem si Chevrolet?
9. Helena: Jasně! A já toužim po extravagantním dortu a klasických šatech.
10. Matěj: Potřebuju tě poprosit, abys mi vybrala oblek.
11. Helena: S tím počítám.

ENGLISH

1. Matěj: We have to plan the wedding. How many people do you want?
2. Helena: I don't want many people. A small wedding is enough.

CONT'D OVER

3. Helena: I mainly want to have family there and close friends.
4. Helena: Don't you want to arrange music? You have so many musician friends.
5. Matěj: Sure, I can. At any rate, I want to invite guys from our band.
6. Helena: You know, I fancy it in a retro style.
7. Helena: Vinyl records on the table and music from the fifties.
8. Matěj: My dream is to drive a Chevrolet to the wedding. Shall we rent a Chevrolet?
9. Helena: Sure! And I long for an extravagant cake and a classic dress.
10. Matěj: I need to ask you to choose my suit.
11. Helena: I was going to.

VOCABULARY

Czech	English	Class
plánovat	to plan something	imperfective verb
chtít	to want	imperfective verb
přát si	to wish for, to desire	imperfective verb
hlavně	mainly, primarily	adverb
hudba	music	noun
rád	would like, gladly	adjective
můj	my, mine	possessive pronoun
sen	dream	noun

toužit	to long for, to yearn	imperfective verb
potřebovat	to need	imperfective verb

SAMPLE SENTENCES

<p>Tohle se nedá plánovat. "This cannot be planned."</p>	<p>Děti chtějí jít ven. "Children want to go out."</p>
<p>Chci se přestěhovat jinam. "I want to move elsewhere."</p>	<p>Chtěla bych nové brýle. "I would like new glasses."</p>
<p>Co si přeješ na Vánoce? "What do you wish for Christmas?"</p>	<p>Hlavně se neřízni. "Just make sure you don't cut yourself."</p>
<p>Žena poslouchá hudbu. "The woman is listening to music."</p>	<p>Žena poslouchá hudbu. The woman is listening to music.</p>
<p>Rád jsem si s Vámi / s tebou dal oběd. "It was nice to have lunch together."</p>	<p>Tohle je můj bratr. "This is my brother."</p>
<p>V noci jsem měl sen. "At night I had a dream."</p>	<p>Minulou noc měl zvláštní sen. "He had a strange dream last night."</p>
<p>Ted' už toužím jen po klidu. "I'm only longing for peace and quiet."</p>	<p>Co potřebujem s sebou? "What do we need with us?"</p>

VOCABULARY PHRASE USAGE

Chci... "I want..."

Chci - means "I want"

This phrase is used to directly express what one's own wants or desires. This phrase is not used to ask somebody for something because it's too direct. The verb in infinitive form is **-chtít** ("to want"). I.e. **Ted' si chci odpočinout.** = "Now I want to have a rest.", **Jé, to je hezký, to chci!** = "Wow, this is pretty, I want this!", **Chci se tě na něco zeptat.** = "I want to ask you something".

For example:

1. *Ted' se chci hlavně vyspat.*
"Now I mainly want to sleep."

Můj sen je.... "My dream is..."

Můj - means "my/ mine", **sen** - means "dream", **je** - means "is".

This is a phrase used when expressing a desire that has not been fulfilled yet. For example, when talking about a future job: **můj sen je stát se pilotem.** = "My dream is to become a pilot.", Talking about holidays: **Můj sen je letět na Kanárský Ostrovy.** = "My dream is to fly to the Canary Islands.", Talking about crazy ideas: **Můj sen je koupit si maringotku.** = "My dream is to buy a circus caravan."

For example:

1. *Můj sen je vylezt na Kilimanjaro.*
"My dream is to climb Kilimanjaro."

Toužim po.... "I long for..."

Toužim - means "I yearn/I long for", **po** - means "for".

Toužim always comes with the preposition po, equivalent to the English "I long for." It cannot be changed for any other preposition, but it's possible to say to desire to have something. This means, instead of a preposition, you can use a verb: *Toužim mít dlouhé vlasy...* = "I desire to have long hair". The expression can also be used when talking about a strong desire, stronger than *-chci* ("I want") or *-přeju si* ("I wish"). I.e. *Toužim po dítěti* = "I desire for/to have a child.", *toužim získat titul* = "I desire to get a degree.", *Toužim se usadit v Itálii* = "I desire to live/to settle in Italy."

For example:

1. *Toužím se dostat na vysokou školu.*
"I desire to go to a university."

GRAMMAR

The Focus Of This Lesson Is Expressions to Discuss Dreams and Desires

Chci tam mít hlavně rodinu a úplně nejbližší známý.
"I mainly want to have family there and the close friends."

There are a few different ways how to express wishes and desires. One of them is through the verb *chtít* "to want". This one is a more straightforward expression as oppose to the conditional form *chtěl bych* "I'd like", discussed in one of the previous lessons.

1) *Chtít* "want"

Chci tam mít hlavně rodinu.

"I want there to have mainly family" (transliterated translation)

"I mainly want to have family there." (loose translation)

The verb *chtít* belongs to the group of modal verbs and if followed by another verb, the other verbs has to be in its infinitive form. Depending on the sentence, the infinitive does not need to be placed right after *chtít*, but within the sentence.

- ***Chci*** *tam* ***mít*** *hlavně rodinu.*

Chci "I want" + adverb + *verb infinitive*

Declension of ***chtít***

<i>já chci</i>	I want	<i>my</i> <i>chcem/</i> <i>e*</i>	we want
<i>ty chceš</i>	you want	<i>vy</i> <i>chcete</i>	you want
<i>on, ona, ono chce</i>	he, she, it wants	<i>oni</i> <i>chtějí/*</i>	they want

*in spoken form, **chceme** becomes **chcem** and **chtějí** becomes **chtěj**.

Other example from the lesson dialogue:

- **Chci pozvat kluky z kapely.**
"I want to invite boys from (our) band."

Chci + verb infinitive + noun (accusative case)

Chít can be also used when talking about places to visit.
I.e.

Chci letět do Prahy.
"I want to fly to Prague."

This is a very common sentence pattern. Let's break down this sentence. The first word is the modal verb *chci* ("want"), in the first person singular form *chtít*. It's followed by the infinitive verb *letět* "to fly". Then there's the preposition *do*, meaning "to" and at the very end the name of a Czech city, in genitive form *Prahy*. Altogether, *Chci letět do Prahy* "I want to fly to Prague".

Negating the verb *chtít*

By adding **,-ne** in front of *chtít* = **nechtít**.

<i>já nechci</i>	I don't want	<i>my nechcem</i>	we don't want
<i>ty nechceš</i>	you don't want	<i>vy nechcete</i>	you don't want
<i>on, on, ono nechce</i>	he, she, it doesn't want	<i>oni nechtějí</i>	they don't want

Examples:

- *Určitě nechci hodně lidí.*
"Definitely **I don't want** many people."
- *Nechceš zařídit hudbu?*
"**Don't you want** to arrange music?"

2) *Toužit po...* "to long for..."

Toužit is equivalent to the English "to desire, to long for, to yearn". It's a strong expression of wanting something. The declension is regular:

<i>já toužím</i>	I long for	<i>my toužíme</i>	we long for
<i>ty toužíš</i>	you long for	<i>vy toužíte</i>	you long for
<i>on, ona, ono touží</i>	he, she, it longs for	<i>oni touží</i>	they long for

- **Toužím po** *extravagantním dortu a klasických šatech.*
"I long for an extravagant cake and a classic dress."

The pattern is usually like this:

toužim po + adjective + declined noun

1. **Toužíme po** *rodinném domě.*
"We long for a family house."
2. **Toužim po** *dlouhých vlasech.*
"I long for long hair."
3. *(Ona)* **touží po** *velké svatbě.*
"She longs for a big wedding."
4. *(On)* **touží po** *velké motorce.*
"He longs for a big motorbike."
5. *(Oni)* **touží po** *klidné chvíli.*
"They long for a quiet moment."
6. **Po jakém** *dárku (ty)* **toužíš** *letos?*
"What kind of present do you desire this year?"

Toužim can be also followed by a verb, reflexive or non-reflexive.

Reflexive verbs:

1. **Toužim si** *odpočinout.*
"I desire to rest (myself)."
2. **Touží si** *vydělat hodně peněz.*
"He desires to earn (himself) lots of money."

3. **Touží** *se vrátit domů.*
"She desires to return (herself) home."

Non-reflexive verbs:

1. **Toužim** *vydělat peníze na auto.*
"I yearn to earn money for a car."
2. **Touží** *udělat zkoušku.*
"She yearns to pass the exam."
3. **Touží** *změnit životní styl.*
"They yearn to change lifestyle."

Pattern:

Toužim + reflexive *se/ si* + verb infinitive + declined noun.

or

Toužim + verb infinitive + declined noun

3) Můj sen je... "My dream is..."

Talking about dreams, there is as straightforward an expression in Czech as there is in English. We sometimes have dreams we want to talk about and we are waiting for the day they come true. There is an example in the lesson dialogue talking about a wedding. Matěj talks about what his dream is:

- *Můj sen je jet na svatbu v Chevroletu.*
"My dream is to go to the wedding in a Chevrolet."

The pattern is: *Můj sen je* + verb infinitive

1. *Můj sen je dostat se do top 10.*
"My dream is to get into the top 10."
2. *Můj sen je navrhovat interiéry.*
"My dream is to interior design."
3. *Můj sen je tvořit hudbu.*
"My dream is to make music."

You can also change the pattern the other way around.

Verb infinitive + (preposition) noun + *je můj sen*.

1. *Dostat se do top 10 je můj sen.*
"To get into the top 10 is my dream."
2. *Navrhovat interiéry je můj sen.*
"To interior design is my dream."
3. *Tvořit hudbu je můj sen.*
"To make music is my dream."

Examples from the dialogue:

Můj sen je jet na svatbu v Chevroletu. Pronajmem si Chevrolet?

"My dream is to drive a Chevrolet to the wedding. Shall we rent a Chevrolet?"

Jasně! A já toužím po extravagantním dortu a klasických šatech.

"Sure! And I long for an extravagant cake and a classic dress. "

Sample Sentences

1. *Chci se zapsat na hodiny piána.*
"I want to enroll in piano lessons."
2. *Můj sen je postavit si vlastní dům.*
"My dream is to build my own house."
3. *Toužím po klidné dovolené.*
"I long for peaceful holidays."

CULTURAL INSIGHT

Weddings

The most common location for a wedding ceremony seems to be still a city hall or other such places of authority located nearby the home of the bride and groom. The location choice for a wedding can also be a favorite restaurant with a city hall nearby due to its convenience. If the groom and bride desire a church wedding, they search for a church or a chapel, or any other religious place where their wedding can take place. Before a church wedding, a consultation with a priest is

necessary. In the past few years, retro and vintage themed weddings have been popular. In upcoming years, the style has been set for romantic and elegant, with emphasis on the bond of love.

Some traditional Czech customs at the wedding day are quite unique. They include things such as the bride and groom giving a cake as a present to the parents, thanking them for their upbringing and asking for their blessing. Making lots of noise on the way to the altar, usually by pulling tied up empty tins behind the car, is an old custom symbolizing the luring out of bad spirits. Nowadays, people mostly hoot their car horns. Break porcelain plates in which the broken pieces have to be swept up by the bride and groom together. The broken pieces bring good luck and sweeping together is the symbol of how they are going to deal with problems together in the marriage.

Useful expression:

svatební zvyky
"wedding customs"

LESSON NOTES

Beginner S1 #20

Visiting a Czech Doctor

CONTENTS

- 2 Czech
- 2 English
- 3 Vocabulary
- 3 Sample Sentences
- 5 Vocabulary Phrase Usage
- 6 Grammar
- 13 Cultural Insight

20

CZECH

1. Matěj: Paní doktorko, je mi hrozně nevolno a bolí mě hlava.
2. Doktorka: To je asi úžeh. Máte vysokou teplotu.
3. Matěj: Pracoval jsem dlouho na zahradě a zapomněl klobouk.
4. Doktorka: Ano, bez klobouku byste neměl chodit ven.
5. Matěj: A co mi teď doporučujete?
6. Doktorka: Teď byste si měl dát studenou sprchu, aby klesla ta teplota. A pijte hodně tekutin.
7. Doktorka: A nechodte na sluníčko. Rozhodně zůstaňte ve stínu.
8. Matěj: Rozumím.
9. Doktorka: A buďte opatrný na cestě zpět! Raději si vezměte taxi.
10. Matěj: Ano, pojedu taxikem. Děkuju.

ENGLISH

1. Matěj: Doctor, I feel very sick and I have a headache.
2. Doctor: It's probably heatstroke. You have a high temperature.
3. Matěj: I worked in the garden for a long time and forgot a hat.
4. Doctor: Yes, you shouldn't go out without a hat.

CONT'D OVER

5. Matěj: What do you recommend for me now?
6. Doctor: Now you should take a cold shower for the temperature to drop down. And drink plenty of liquids.
7. Doctor: And don't go out in the sun. Definitely stay in the shade.
8. Matěj: I understand.
9. Doctor: And be careful on the way back! Better take a taxi.
10. Matěj: Yes, I'll take a taxi. Thank you.

VOCABULARY

Czech	English	Class
nevolnost	sickness	noun
úžeh	heatstroke	noun
mít	to have	modal verb
dát si	to have, to take	perfective verb
hodně	a lot, plenty	adverb
pít	drink	imperfective verb
zůstat	to remain, to stay	perfective verb
být	to be	imperfective verb
opatrný	careful	adjective
vzít si	to take, to have (something)	perfective verb

SAMPLE SENTENCES

<p>Těhotné ženy trpí ranní nevolností.</p> <p>"Pregnant women suffer from morning sickness."</p>	<p>Bolest hlavy může být z úžehu.</p> <p>"A headache can be from heatstroke."</p>
<p>Máme ještě stůl pro dva.</p> <p>"We still have a table for two."</p>	<p>Ano, máme stůl pro dvě osoby.</p> <p>"Yes, we do have a table for two people."</p>
<p>Mají v zahradě spoustu odpadků.</p> <p>"They have too much garbage in their garden."</p>	<p>Mám dva bratry a sestru.</p> <p>"I have two brothers and one sister."</p>
<p>Co si dáte k pití?</p> <p>"What will you have to drink?"</p>	<p>Dáš si něco k pití?</p> <p>"Will you have something to drink?"</p>
<p>Tady je hodně vody.</p> <p>"Here is a lot of water."</p>	<p>Piju jen neslazený čaj.</p> <p>"I drink only unsweetened tea."</p>
<p>Žena pije vodu.</p> <p>The woman is drinking water.</p>	<p>Zůstanem tu přes víkend.</p> <p>"We'll stay here over the weekend."</p>
<p>Někdy bych chtěl být tebou.</p> <p>"Sometimes I'd like to be you."</p>	<p>Jsem nerozhodný.</p> <p>"I'm indecisive."</p>
<p>Musím být v práci v osm hodin.</p> <p>"I need to be at work at eight o'clock."</p>	<p>Chci být doma.</p> <p>"I want to be at home."</p>
<p>Být muž.</p> <p>"To be a man."</p>	<p>Otec byl vždy opatrný.</p> <p>"My father was always careful."</p>

Vezměte si tu ovoce.

"Here, take some fruit."

VOCABULARY PHRASE USAGE

Neměl byste... -
"You shouldn't..."

Neměl = negative form of *měl* ("should"), **byste** = conditional form of *být* ("to be").

This phrased can be used when advising not to do something, or when correcting one's behaviour. The conditional form **byste**, changes to **bys** in informal speech. Here are some examples giving advice: **Neměla bys používat tuhle chemikálii.** = "You should not be using this chemical stuff." **Neměl bys ten problém ignorovat.** = "You should not be ignoring that problem." Now, here are some examples of correcting behaviour: **Neměl byste tu kouřit** = "You should not be smoking here." **Neměli byste tu rozdělávat oheň!** = "You should not be opening fire here!"

For example:

1. *Neměl byste se přepínat.*
"You shouldn't get overstretched. "

Hodně pijte. -
"Drink a lot."

Hodně = "plenty/a lot", **pijte** = is imperative form of *pít* "to drink" in formal speech (*pij* = informal speech)

This expression is used commonly when giving advice or instructions by a doctor, or by a friend (in the case of a friend, informal speech is used). Imperative form here is not interpreted as an order, but rather as strong advice. Of course the imperative form can apply to other kinds advice besides drinking of plenty liquid. Examples: *Hodně odpočívej/te* = "Have plenty of rest", *Jez/te hodně ovoce* = "eat plenty of fruit", *Dopřej/te si hodně čerstvého vzduchu* = "have plenty of fresh air", etc.

For example:

1. *Ted' hodně spi.*
"Now sleep a lot. "

***Bud'te opatrný!* -
"Be careful!"**

Bud'te is the imperative form of ***být*** "to be", ***Opatrný*** means "careful".

As an imperative form, ***bud'te*** can be combined with other adjectives besides ***opatrný***, such as ***Bud' hodný!*** ("Be good!"), ***Bud' skromný!*** ("Be modest!"), ***Bud'te ohleduplný!*** ("Be considerate!"). This form, ***bud'***, is often used when asking for a favour, such as: ***Bud'te tak hodný a pomozte mi*** = "Would you be so kind and help me." ***Bud' tak laskav a zavři to okno.*** = "Would you be so kind and shut the window."

For example:

1. *Bud'te tady hodní!*
"Be good here!"

GRAMMAR

The Focus Of This Lesson Is Following the Doctor's Advice, the Modal Meaning of *Mít*, and the imperative form

Ano, bez klobouku byste neměl chodit ven.
"Yes, you shouldn't go out without a hat. "

Modal meaning of *mít* "to have"

When we have a problem, we often seek advice either from friends, family or from a professional. In language terms, giving advice in Czech is done through the conditional form of ***bys*** ("should") and through the modal verb ***mít*** ("to have") which, when put together, create the modal meaning ***měl bys*** ("you should"). There are these following forms:

You should

měl bych

"I should"

*měli bychom/
bysme**

"we should"

<i>měl bys</i> <i>měla bys</i>	"you should" (masc) "you should" (femin)	<i>měli byste</i>	"you should"
<i>měl by</i> <i>měla by</i>	"he should" "she should"	<i>měli by</i>	"they should"

* *bysme* is the colloquial spoken form

M: Měl bys/te jít k doktoru.

F: Měla bys/te jít k doktoru.

"You should go to the doctor."

All of the above forms correspond to the English "you should" or "you ought to".

Using the above forms to say what one should do, we answer this question:

1. *Měl bys nosit čepici.*
"You should wear a hat."
2. *Měla bys pít víc tekutin.*
"You should drink more liquid."
3. *Měli by se víc oblékat.*
"They should dress more."
4. *Měli bysme jíst zdravěji.*
"They should eat healthier."

In the dialogue, we heard the sentence: *Ted' byste si měl dát studenou sprchu* = "Now you should take a cold shower". To make this sentence shorter for learning purposes, the most important point here is the conditional form with the modal verb:

- **Měl byste si dát studenou sprchu.**
"You should (yourself) have a cold shower."

incomplete, activity.

For example, when asking somebody NOT to do something, the perfective verb becomes imperfective in the imperative form .

Example from the lesson dialogue:

- **Nechodte** na sluníčko.
"Don't go in the sun."

perfective verbs	basic imperative form	imperfective verbs	negative imperative form imperfective
<i>zůstat</i> "to stay"	<i>Zůstaň! Zůstaňte!</i> "stay!"	<i>zůstávat</i> "to stay on"	<i>Nezůstávej! Nezůstavejte!</i> "Don't stay!"
<i>vzít si</i> "to take" (yourself)	<i>Vem si! Vemte si!</i> "take!"	<i>brát si</i> "to keep taking"	<i>Neber si! Neberte si!</i> "Don't take!"
<i>jít</i> "to go"	<i>Jdi!</i> "Go!"	<i>chodit</i> "to keep walking"	<i>Nechod! Nechodte!</i> "Don't go!"

Example of basic imperative form from the lesson dialogue:

- **Zůstaňte** ve stínu.
"Stay in the shade."
- *Raději si vemte* taxi.
"Better (yourself) take a taxi."

Besides being at the doctor's, there are some other common imperative forms that are good to memorize. These can be used on a daily basis:

- "Watch out!"
Pozor! (noun, no change of form)

- "Careful!"
Opatrně! (adverb, no change of form)
- "Hurry up!"
Dělej! / Pospěš si!
- "Be quiet!"
Bud' zticha!
- "Stop it!"
Přestaň! / Nech toho!
- "Don't worry!"
Neboj se!
- "Leave me alone!"
Nech mě!
- "Look!"
Podívej! / Hele!
- "Keep well!"
Opatrujte se!
- "Have a good time!"
Mějte se hezky!
- "Be good!"
Nezlob!
- "Come in!"
Pojďte dál!
- "Call!"
Zavolej!

- "Have fun!"
Užij si to!

For the plural form or the polite/formal speech, you just add **-te** after a verb.

- *Pozdravuj...!* → *Pozdravuj**te**...!* ("Say hello...!")
- *Bud' zticha!* → *Bud'**te** zticha!* ("Be quiet.")

We divide imperatives into **regular** and **irregular**.

1) Regular Imperatives:

In order to create the imperative form, you need to use the third person plural (they) in present tense, and leave out the endings **,-ou**, **-ají**, and **-í**, from the verbs. For example:

Leaving out , -ou (no replacement needed)

The stem of the verb has one consonant only and , -ou in the third person plural:

Děkovat ("to thank") → *Oni děkuj-ou* ("they are thanking") → *děkuj!/děkuj-te!* ("Thank!")

Pít ("to drink") → *Oni pij-ou* ("they drink") → *Pij!/pij-te!* ("Drink!")

Leaving out , -ou, -í (replace with , -i, -ete, -ěte)

The stem of the verb has two consonants (especially , -st) or lacking a syllable

Myslet ("to think") → *Oni mysl-í* ("they think") → *mysl-i!/mysl-ete!* ("Think!")

Číst ("to read") → *Oni čt-ou* ("they read") → *čt-i! / čt-ěte!* ("Read!")

Leaving out , -ají (replace with , -ej, -ejte)

Verbs ending with , -at, -át and have , - ají in third person plural

dát si ("to take") → *oni si d-ají* ("they take") → *dej si!* ("Have!")

dělat ("to do") → *oni děl-ají* ("they do") → *dělej!* ("Do it!")

zpívat ("to sing") → *oni zpív-ají* ("they sing") → *zpívej!* ("Sing!")

2) Irregular Imperatives

These have to be memorized because of their irregularities.

Czech verb	English translation	Imperative	English translation
<i>být</i>	"to be"	<i>bud', bud'te!</i>	"be!"
<i>jíst</i>	"to eat"	<i>jez, jezte!</i>	"eat!"
<i>jít</i>	"to go"	<i>jdi, jděte!</i>	"go!"
<i>koupit</i>	"to buy"	<i>kup, kupte!</i>	"buy!"
<i>mít</i>	"to have"	<i>měj, mějte!</i>	"have!"
<i>přijít</i>	"to come"	<i>přijď, přijďte!</i>	"come!"
<i>stát</i>	"to halt/ to stand"	<i>stůj, stůjte!</i>	"halt, stop!"
<i>sníst</i>	"to eat up"	<i>sněž, snězte!</i>	"eat up!"
<i>vrátit se</i>	"to come back"	<i>vrať se, vraťte se!</i>	"come back!"
<i>vědět</i>	"to know"	<i>věz, vězte!</i>	"know!"
<i>pomoc</i>	"to help"	<i>pomoz, pomozte!</i>	"help!"

The irregular *být* "to be" is used more in its negative form when used as an imperative. Examples:

- *Nebud' drzý!*
"Don't be rude!"
- *Nebud' taková!*
"Don't be like that!"

The positive form *bud'* can have a negative/ironic connotation. Example:

- *Bud' tak "laskav" a nepleť se tu!*
"Would you be so "kind" and stop getting in my way!"

Usually *bud'* is used as a form of asking:

1) a favour without having the imperative meaning

2) a short command

1) *Bud' tak hodný a podrž mi to.*

"Be kind and hold this for me."

2) *Bud'te ohleduplní!*

"Be considerate!"

Examples from the dialogue:

Ted' byste si měl dát studenou sprchu, aby klesla ta teplota. A pijte hodně tekutin.

"Now you should take a cold shower for the temperature to drop down. And drink plenty of liquid."

A bud'te opatrný na cestě zpět! Raději si vezměte taxi.

"And be careful on the way back! Better take a taxi."

Sample Sentences

1. *Neměli byste tu nechávat odpadky.*

"You shouldn't leave rubbish here."

2. *Neběhejte podél bazénu.*

"Don't run by the pool."

3. *Dávejte pozor!*

"Pay attention!"

CULTURAL INSIGHT

Czech Medicine

The Czech Republic has been historically renowned for its excellency in medicine. In recent years, not only do tourists visit the country for sightseeing, but many people come for the so called "medical tourism." Such travellers come to the Czech Republic for medical treatment whilst enjoying some sightseeing and Czech cuisine at the same time. Treatments are often sought in dentistry or in plastic surgery. Many excellent doctors are based not only in the Czech Republic, but also abroad. To name one, a Czech surgeon who focuses on face reconstruction plastic surgery living in the US, Dr. Bohdan Pomahac, was given the Czech Transplant Foundation Award in 2012 for one of the very first and successful whole face

transplant operations.

There are two types of hospitals available in the Czech Republic; private ones and state hospitals. The state hospitals have a very good reputation and they are said to be the pillar of Czech health care. There is not much difference in the treatment offered by a state hospital or by a private one, except that private hospitals also need to consider making a profit and so they might offer more expensive treatments. On the other hand, state hospitals cannot make any profit and all money provided to them is used solely for the patient's care.

Privatization of hospitals in the Czech Republic is an ongoing process, it started after the Velvet Revolution in 1989, and continues regionally with the progress of medicine. Not all hospitals will be privatized, but when some hospitals become financially troubled due to modernization and more expensive operation costs, they need to be offered to privatize.

Useful expression:

soukromá nemocnice
"private hospital"

LESSON NOTES

Beginner S1 #21

Ordering a Taxi in the Czech Republic

CONTENTS

- 2 Czech
- 2 English
- 3 Vocabulary
- 3 Sample Sentences
- 4 Vocabulary Phrase Usage
- 5 Grammar
- 12 Cultural Insight

21

CZECH

1. Matěj: Dobrý den, chtěl bych si objednat taxi.
2. Zaměstnankyně: Ano, a kam pojedete?
3. Matěj: Z Ověnecké ulice 25 (dvacet pět), Praha 7 (sedm), na letiště.
4. Zaměstnankyně: Ano, a na který den a v kolik hodin byste chtěli taxi?
5. Matěj: Na zítřek, pátek v 11 (jedenáct) hodin dopoledne.
6. Zaměstnankyně: Bude to taxi pro jednoho?
7. Matěj: Ne, bude to pro 3 (tři) lidi. Dva dospělí a dítě. Ještě máme dva velké kufry.
8. Zaměstnankyně: Takže potřebujete větší auto?
9. Matěj: Ano, abysme se vešli. Nějaký kombi nebo tak.
10. Zaměstnankyně: Rozumím. A na jaké jméno?
11. Matěj: Bude to na jméno Hollan.

ENGLISH

1. Matěj: Hello, I'd like to request a taxi.
2. Employee (F): Certainly, and where are you going?
3. Matěj: From Ověnecká street 25, Prague 7, to the airport.

CONT'D OVER

4. Employee (F): Sure, and for which day and time would you like the taxi?
5. Matěj: Tomorrow, Friday at 11 o'clock before noon.
6. Employee (F): Is it a taxi for one person?
7. Matěj: No, it will be for three people. Two adults and a child. We also have two big suitcases.
8. Employee (F): So you need a bigger car?
9. Matěj: Yes, so that we can all fit in. A combi or similar.
10. Employee (F): I understand. And under what name?
11. Matěj: It'll be on the name Hollan.

VOCABULARY

Czech	English	Class
objednat si	to order (for oneself)	perfective verb
jet	to go	imperfective verb
z	from	preposition
na	to; on; for	preposition
který	which, what, who	pronoun
zítrěk	tomorrow	noun
jeden	one	counter
dospělý	adult	noun
aby	so that, in order to	conjunction
vejít se	to fit in, to fit into	perfective verb

SAMPLE SENTENCES

Objednám si sendvič. "I'll order a sandwich."	Lidé jedou do Los Angeles. "People are going to Los Angeles."
Jedeme na výlet. "We're going on a trip."	Lidé jedou do Los Angeles. "They are going to Los Angeles."
Jsem z Kanady. "I am from Canada."	Jsem z Kanady. "I am from Canada."
Karta na telefon. "Card for a cell-phone."	Na shledanou. "Good bye."
Pán, který to objednal. "The man who ordered this."	Zítřka nemám čas. "Tomorrow I have no time."
Je tam jen jeden člověk. "There is one person there."	Jedno kafe, prosím. "One coffee please."
Nebreč, už jsi dospělý. "Don't cry, you are an adult."	Chci, aby to fungovalo. "I want this to work."
Chci, aby ses měl dobře. "I want you to be well."	Nevejdu se do kalhot. "I can't fit into the trousers."

VOCABULARY PHRASE USAGE

Na který den.... -
"**For which day**"

Na - is the preposition "for", **který-is** a pronoun meaning "which", and **den** - is a noun meaning "day".

Na který den - is a phrase used, for example, when making a reservation or

ordering something. It could be a taxi, or ordering a cake, having your shoes repaired and so on. The preposition *-na*, usually meaning "at", in the case of ordering or making a reservation, is translated as "for" (ie. for which day?). **Na který den rezervuješ restauraci?** = "For which day do you reserve the restaurant?," **Na který den jsme objednaní u zubaře?** = "For which day do we have appointment at the dentist?"

For example:

Na který den objednáme ten dort?
"For which day do we order the cake?"

Bude to pro...
"That will be for..."

Bude - is future tense "will be," **to** - means "it," **pro** - means "for."

This phrase is used mainly when dealing with a reservation or an order. It works as a confirmation phrase from the person/staff or an information phrase by the person who makes the order/ reservation. For example: *Bude to pro Vás?* = "Will that be for you?," *Bude to taxi pro jednu osobu?* = "Will that be a taxi for one person?," *Tohle bude pro mého syna.* = "This will be for my son."

For example:

Bude to pro pět lidí.
"It will be for five people."

Abysme se ..
"So that we..."

Abysme - expresses a purpose, similar to "in order to." **Se** - is the reflexive pronoun "yourself."

Aby is the subject of declension of personal pronouns (I, you, he, she, we, etc.) **Abysme** is the plural first person "we." **Abysme přišli včas** = "in order to/ so that we come in time." **Abys to přistě věděl** = "So that/in order that you know next time."

For example:

Tak abysme se podělili všichni.
"In order to share among all of us. "

GRAMMAR

The Focus Of This Lesson Is Using the Accusative Case in Order to Make a Request for a Taxi Over the Phone.

Dobrý den, chtěl bych si objednat taxi. **"Hello, I'd like to order a taxi. "**

The accusative case is the 4th case on the declension scale of 7. We distinguish between the accusative singular and plural. The singular or plural noun will change its ending according to the gender and declension case. In the case of foreign words, those often do not change its form. I.e.

- *Já objednám taxi.*
"I will order a taxi."
- *Já objednám kávu.*
"I will order a coffee."

In both sentences, the nouns "taxi" and "coffee" are in the accusative form. To explain this, **Já** is the subject of the sentence (doing the action of ordering), whilst "taxi" or "coffee" are the direct object of each sentence (the object to which the action of ordering is being done). Therefore, any noun that is the direct object of the sentence has to change its ending according to the declension scale and gender. In our case here, "taxi" does not change its form because it's not originally a Czech word whilst **káva** is a feminine noun following the model noun *žena* when declining.

For the accusative case, we have to ask a question *Koho?* (Who?) *Co?* (What?)

- I am ordering what? (*co?*) *kávu, taxi*

1. The accusative case of model nouns.

		model noun	accusative single	accusative plural
masculine animate	nouns ending with	<i>pán</i> "lord"	<i>pána</i>	<i>pány</i>
	<i>h, ch, k, r, d, t, n</i>	<i>hrad</i> "castle"	<i>hrad</i>	<i>hrady</i>
inanimate				

animate	nouns ending in soft consonants ž, š, č, ř, c, j, d', t', ň, + tel,	<i>muž</i> "man" <i>soudce</i> "judge" <i>předseda</i> "chairman"	<i>muže</i> <i>soudce</i> <i>předsedu</i>	<i>muže</i> <i>soudce</i> <i>předsedy</i>
inanimate		<i>stroj</i> "machine"	<i>stroj</i>	<i>stroje</i>
feminine	nouns ending with -a , and majority ending nouns ending with e, ie, ev and consonants ž, š, č, ř, c, j, t', ň, l, + st, and minority endings	<i>žena</i> "woman" <i>růže</i> "rose" <i>píseň</i> "song" <i>kost</i> "bone"	<i>ženu</i> <i>růži</i> <i>píseň</i> <i>kost</i>	<i>ženy</i> <i>růže</i> <i>písně</i> <i>kosti</i>
neuter	nouns ending in, -o, e, í and other minority endings	<i>město</i> "town" <i>kuře</i> "chicken" <i>moře</i> "sea" <i>stavení</i> "building"	<i>město</i> <i>kuře</i> <i>moře</i> <i>stavení</i>	<i>města</i> <i>kuřata</i> <i>moře</i> <i>stavení</i>

Please note that the masculine inanimate and neutral gender remain the same in the singular accusative case.

2. Nouns from the lesson dialogue in its accusative form:

	nominative sing.	accusative sing.	accusative plural
--	-------------------------	-------------------------	--------------------------

masculine inanimate	pátek "friday"	pátek	pátky
animate	Matěj (male name)	Matěje	Matěje
feminine	ulice "street"	ulici	ulice
neutral	letišťe "airport" taxi	letišťe taxi	letišťe taxi

Accusative form is often connected with prepositions. These are the most used:

mezi = "between," *na* = "to/at," *nad* = "above, over," *o* = "for," *pod* = "under," *po* = "up to," *pro* = "for," *před* = "in front of," *přes* = "over," *skrz* = "via," *za* = "instead, behind."

Sentence examples from the dialogue:

- A: *A kam pojedete?*
"And where are you going?"
- B: *Z Ovenceké ulice **na letišťe**.*
"From Ovenceká street **to the airport.**"

The accusative case of the neuter noun *letišťe* is connected with the preposition *na* ("to").

Asking a question **Na Koho?** ("to/toward whom"), **Na co?** ("to/toward what?")
= **na letišťe** ("to the airport")

As a neuter noun, *letišťe* does not change its form in the accusative case.

- A: *A na který den byste chtěli taxi?*
"And for which day would you like a taxi?"
- B: **Na zítřek.**
"For tomorrow."

In this sentence, the accusative case is in the word **zítřek**, a masculine inanimate noun meaning "tomorrow." Because it's an inanimate masculine noun ending with hard consonant *k*, it will follow the model noun *hrad* (see table 1. above). This noun does not change its form in the accusative case.

Masculine inanimate gender following the model noun *hrad* ("castle")

1.nominative (naming, who/what)	<i>hrad</i> "castle"	<i>zířek</i> "tomorrow"
2.genitive (possessive, whose)	<i>hradu</i>	<i>zířku</i>
3.dative (giving, to whom)	<i>hradu</i>	<i>zířku</i>
4.accusative (pointing, can see who/ what)	<i>hrad</i>	<i>zířek</i>
5.vocative (calling by name)	<i>hrade!</i>	<i>zířku!</i> *
6.locative (place, about who/what)	<i>hradu/ě</i>	<i>zířku</i>
7.instrumental (by,through means, with who/what)	<i>hradem</i>	<i>zířkem</i>

* *Zířke!* like *Hrade!* is not applicable here. Instead, for easier pronunciation, after **k** must be *Zířku!*

Important:

All the prepositions mentioned above will require to use the *accusative* case of the noun following the preposition. However, please note that there are two meanings of the preposition **na**:

1. When we speak about **going TO a place** (movement toward a place), such as *na letiřtě* ("to the airport"), the **accusative** case of the noun is needed. (The preposition *na* applies to open, unlimited spaces and locations, such as a street, railway station, islands, peninsulas, or when talking about actions and activities, such as *na koncert* ("to a concert"), *na výstavu* ("to an exhibition), etc.)
2. When we speak about **being somewhere or working at a place**, such as *na letiřti* ("at the airport") you need to use a noun and its **locative** case.

Accusative

- *Jedu **na** letiště.*
"I am travelling/going **to** the airport."
- *Jedeme **na** hory.*
"We are travelling/going **to** the mountains."

Locative

- *Jsem **na** letišti.*
"I am **at** the airport."
- *Jsme **na** horách.*
"We are **in** the mountains."

Neutral gender following the model noun *moře* "sea"

1.nominative (naming, who/what)	letiště	moře
2.genitive (possessive, whose)	<i>letiště</i>	<i>moře</i>
3.dative (giving, to whom)	<i>letišti</i>	<i>moři</i>
4.accusative (to where?)	<i>na letiště</i> "to the airport"	<i>na moře</i> "to the sea"
5.vocative (calling by name)	<i>letiště!</i>	<i>moře!</i>
6.locative (place, where?)	<i>na letišti</i> "at the airport"	<i>na moři</i> "at the sea"
7.instrumental (by,through means, with who/what)	<i>letištěm</i>	<i>mořem</i>

Prepositions connected with days

When we speak about days in English, we often use preposition **on**:

- **on Monday, on Tuesday, on Saturday**, etc.

In Czech language, the equivalent is preposition **v** ("in") for the days of the week:

- **v pondělí** = "on Monday," **v úterý** = "on Tuesday," **v sobotu** = "on Saturday," etc.

When we speak about ordering something for a certain day, or leaving something (we need to do) for a certain day, in English we use the preposition "**for**":

- "let's order it **for** Monday, **for** Friday, **for** Sunday," etc
- "let's leave it **for** Monday, **for** Friday, **for** Sunday:," etc

In Czech language, we use the preposition **na + accusative** case of the noun:

- *Objednáme to **na** pondělí, **na** pátek, **na** neděli, etc.*
- *Necháme to **na** pondělí, **na** pátek, **na** neděli, etc.*

Don't forget to follow the gender of each noun.

	Gender	Noun	na + accusative	v + locative
"Monday"	<u>neuter</u>	<i>pondělí</i>	<i>na pondělí</i>	<i>v pondělí</i>
"Tuesday"	<u>neuter</u>	<i>úterý</i>	<i>na úterý</i>	<i>v úterý</i>
"Wednesday"	feminine	středa	na středu	ve středu
"Thursday"	masculine	<i>čtvrtek</i>	<i>na čtvrtek</i>	<i>ve čtvrtek</i>
"Friday"	masculine	<i>pátek</i>	<i>na pátek</i>	<i>v pátek</i>
"Saturday"	feminine	sobota	na sobotu	v sobotu
"Sunday"	feminine	neděle	na neděli	v neděli

Examples from the Dialogue

Na zítřek, pátek v 11 (jedenáct) hodin dopoledne.

"Tomorrow, Friday at 11 o'clock before noon. "

Bude to taxi pro jednoho?

"Is it a taxi for one person?"

Sample Sentences

Chtěl bych taxi na jednu hodinu odpoledne.

"I'd like a taxi for one o'clock in the afternoon."

Připravíme taxi pro čtyři lidi.

"We'll prepare a taxi for four people. "

Rezervace je na moje jméno.

"The reservation is under my name. "

CULTURAL INSIGHT

Taxi

There are many taxi services available in Prague. The choice is larger than in small towns across the Czech Republic. Nowadays, taxi services are only managed by private companies, and although the service is part of public transportation, it is not subsidized by public funds. In Prague, there are several large companies that provide taxi services. One of the biggest ones is taxi AAA operating mainly across Prague and the airport. Companies have a choice of several types of cars, ranging from usual ones, for four people, to larger ones, with bigger trunks for luggage, or mini buses for six or more people. The city of Prague controls the maximum price per kilometer.

In small cities, usually one or two small companies are in operation. Even smaller places, such as towns with around ten thousand people, there may even be individuals providing a freelance taxi service. Each district or municipality is in charge of their own public transportation and price regulation for these services based on decisions by the Ministry of Finance, including taxi service, but excluding freelancers.

There are a few things one has to be aware of when getting a taxi in Prague or in a small town. Large companies tend to have fixed prices and are controlled by an authority. Their prices remain unchanged and drivers get proper training. Small companies or freelancers in Prague may use different prices, and although they should adhere to the max price per kilometer, they might charge a higher initial fee

to cover their expenses, waiting time etc. Make sure you check if the taxi has a licence and the name of the company. It is not uncommon in the Czech Republic that some drivers exceed the maximum given price they charge per kilometer.

Useful expression:

Stanovište taxislužby.

"Taxi rank."

LESSON NOTES

Beginner S1 #22

Is Your Czech Train Delayed?

CONTENTS

- 2 Czech
- 2 English
- 3 Vocabulary
- 3 Sample Sentences
- 4 Vocabulary Phrase Usage
- 5 Grammar
- 10 Cultural Insight

22

CZECH

1. Jitka: Za 10 (deset) minut jede vlak. Musíme na nástupiště.
2. Matěj: Jo, jede to z nástupiště 4 (čtyři).
3. Jitka: Jdeme. Počkej! Hlášení.
4. Zaměstnankyně: Vážení cestující, mezinárodní vlak Pendolino s pravidelným odjezdem do Vídně v 10.46 (deset čtyřičet šest), bude opožděn o 20 (dvacet) minut.
5. Matěj: Ten je náš! Má spoždění.
6. Jitka: A jo, tak musíme počkat.
7. Matěj: Počkej! Ještě něco hlásí.
8. Zaměstnankyně: Mezinárodní vlak Pendolino do Vídně bude nyní odjíždět z nástupiště číslo 12 (dvanáct).
9. Jitka: Jéžiš, musíme běžet na dvanáctku.
10. Matěj: To je v pohodě. To stihnem, když má spoždění.

ENGLISH

1. Jitka: The train is leaving in 10 minutes. Let's go to the platform.
2. Matěj: Right, it's leaving from number 4.
3. Jitka: Let's go. Wait! An announcement.

CONT'D OVER

4. Employee(F): Dear passengers, international train Pendolino scheduled to depart at 10.46 to Vienna will be delayed by 20 minutes.
5. Matěj: That's ours! It's delayed.
6. Jitka: Oh yeah, so we have to wait.
7. Matěj: Hold on! One more announcement.
8. Employee(F): The international train Pendolino bound for Vienna will now be departing from platform 12.
9. Jitka: Oh man, we need to run to number twelve.
10. Matěj: Easy. We can make it if there is a delay.

VOCABULARY

Czech	English	Class
na	to; on; for	preposition
nástupiště	platform	noun
čtyřka	number four	noun
hlášení	announcement	noun
spoždění	delay	noun
naše	our, ours	possessive pronoun
hlásit	to report, to announce	imperfective verb
odjezd	departure	noun
běžet	to run, to rush	imperfective verb
stihnout	to catch, to manage in time, to make it	imperfective verb

SAMPLE SENTENCES

Karta na telefon. "Card for a cell-phone."	Na shledanou. "Good bye."
Z kterého nástupiště? "From which platform?"	Je tu napsaná čtyřka. "Number four is written here."
Dnes bylo ve městě hlášení. "There was an announcement in town today."	Tenhle autobus má spoždění. "This bus has a delay."
Naše rodina je velká. "Our family is big."	Nezapomeň mi hlásit co je nového. "Don't forget to report what the news is."
Odjezd je až za hodinu. "The departure is in one hour."	Už musím běžet! "I have to rush! "
Musíme to stihnout! "We have to make it! (in time)"	

VOCABULARY PHRASE USAGE

muset na... -
"need to go to"

Muset means "have to" (modal verb). **Na** = preposition meaning "at, to, on."

This phrase, along with the preposition, is used when talking about an obligation to go somewhere or do something. For example: **Musím na poštu.** ("I have to go to the post office."), **Musím na záchod.** ("I have to go to the toilet."), **Musím na schůzku.** ("I have to go to a meeting."), **Musíme na přestup.** ("We have to go to the transfer (connecting flight).").

For example:

Musím na nákup.

"I have to go shopping."

Hlášení -
"announcement"

Hlášení means "announcement" or "report"

It's used usually in loud public announcements, such as at the train station, in town, in school via intercom, or an ambulance speaker. It can also be used in terms of reporting something. For example: *Hlášení chyby* = "reporting an error" (ie. computer error), *dopravní hlášení* = "traffic news/report."

For example:

Hlášení městského rozhlasu.
"City public announcement. "

Stihnout (něco)... -
"To make it (in time)"

Stihnout means "to get somewhere in time," or "to manage to go somewhere within a limited time, or "to catch up with somebody."

When used in terms of getting somewhere in time:

Stihli jsme vlak. = "We caught the train/we made it to the train in time."

Stihli jsme letadlo včas = "We managed to catch the flight/ to get there in time."

When talking about catching up with somebody:

Stihla jsem Karla ještě doma = "I caught Carl still at home"

Ještě jsem vás stihla! = "I still managed to catch up with you!"

Stihli jsme mezitím i nakoupit. = "We managed some shopping in the meantime."

Stihli jsme se ještě vykoupat v jezeře. = "We still managed to bathe in the lake."

For example:

Stihla jsi zajít do lékárny?
"Did you manage to go to the pharmacy?"

GRAMMAR

The Focus Of This Lesson Is The Usage of Prepositions Followed by

the Genitive Case to Understand an Announcement at the Station

Jo, jede to z nástupiště 4 (čtyři)

"Right, it's leaving from number four."

In previous lesson we talked about prepositions connected with the accusative case (*na* + accusative). We explained the difference with the preposition *na* meaning "at" or "to/toward" in terms of movement or stillness (being at a place). In this lesson we will expand the topic about prepositions that are connected with the genitive case.

The Genitive Case is connected with these prepositions:

bez ("without"), *během* ("during"), *blízko* ("near"), *do* ("to/into"), *kolem* ("around"), *kromě* ("besides"), *místo* ("instead"), *od* ("from"), *podle* ("according to"), *podél* ("alongside"), *u* ("by"), *uprostřed* ("in the middle"), *vedle* ("next to"), *z* ("from"), *za* ("behind").

Let's pick the prepositions that are in our lesson dialogue when talking about trains and places.

- *Vlak **do** Vídně bude odjíždět **z** nástupiště číslo 12 (dvanáct).*
- "Train going **to** Vienna will be departing **from** platform number twelve."

Do Vídně

"to Vienna"

Z nástupiště

"from platform"

Preposition **do** "to, into" + genitive case is used with the motion to the inside of places, meaning either closed places (buildings) or limited units (states, countries, cities, towns, villages).

Example sentences:

Jdu do divadla.

"I'm going (on foot) to the theatre."

Jdu do drogerie.

"I'm going (on foot) to the chemist's."

Jedu do města.

"I'm going (by vehicle) to town."

Jedu do Německa.

"I'm going (by vehicle) to Germany."

Jedu do Kolína.

"I'm going (by vehicle) to Cologne."

Letím do Itálie.

"I am flying to Italy."

Preposition **z** "from" + genitive case is used with the motion out of the places, not limited to only closed places (buildings) or units (states, countries, cities, towns, villages).

Jdu z divadla.

"I'm going (on foot) from theatre."

Jdu z drogerie.

"I'm going (on foot) from chemist's."

Jedu z města.

"I'm going (by vehicle) from town."

Jedu z Německa.

"I'm going from Germany."

Jedu z Kolína.

"I'm going from Cologne."

Letím z Itálie.

"I am flying from Italy."

Please note that as for the verb **jít**, although its meaning is "to go on foot" it is also used as "return" or "coming back" on foot from somewhere.

Jít = "to go on foot"

- ***Jdeme z hřiště.***
"We are **coming back/ returning** from a play ground."
- ***Jdeme z kina.***
"We are **coming back/returning** from cinema."
- ***Jdeme ze školy.***
"We are **coming back/ returning** from school."

Jet = "to go by a vehicle"

- **Jedeme z hřiště.**
"We are **coming back/ returning** from a play ground."
- **Jedeme z kina.**
"We are **coming back/returning** from cinema."
- **Jedeme ze školy**
"We are **coming back/ returning** from school."

Genders and how they are used in genitive case

Gender	Model noun	Genitive of the model noun	Example noun	Genitive of the example noun
masculine	<i>pán hrad muž stroj</i>	<i>pána hradu muže stroje</i>	<i>Kolín "Cologne" vlak "train" cestovatel "traveler" čaj "tea"</i>	<i>Kolína vlaků cestovatele čaje</i>
feminine	<i>žena růže píseň kost</i>	<i>ženy růže písně kosti</i>	<i>Afrika "Africa" Itálie "Italy" Víděň "name" pevnost "fortress"</i>	<i>Afriky Itálie Víděně pevností</i>
neuter	<i>město moře kuře stavení</i>	<i>města moře kuřete stavení</i>	<i>Německo "Germany" nástupiště "platform" mládě "young animal" údolí "valley"</i>	<i>Německa nástupiště mláděte údolí</i>
neuter nouns ending with -um			<i>muzeum "museum" pódium "stage" "</i>	<i>muzea pódia</i>

Prepositions used with the genitive

Czech	English translation
<i>bez</i>	"without"
<i>během</i>	"during"
<i>blízko</i>	"near"
<i>do</i>	"to/into"
<i>kolem</i>	"around"
<i>kromě</i>	"besides"
<i>místo</i>	"instead"
<i>od</i>	"from"
<i>podle</i>	"according to"
<i>podél</i>	"alongside"
<i>u</i>	"by"
<i>uprostřed</i>	"in the middle"
<i>vedle</i>	"next to"
<i>z</i>	"from"
<i>za</i>	"behind"

Example:

Mezinárodní vlak Pendolino do Vídně bude nyní odjíždět z nástupiště číslo 12 (dvanáct).

"International train Pendolino to Vienna will be now departing from platform 12.

feminine noun, *Vídeň* → genitive: *do Vídně*

neuter noun, *nástupiště* → genitive: *z nástupiště*

Announcements, such as at the train station or bus station, they usually use more formal speech and announce the platform number as:

- *Jede to z nástupiště číslo 12 (dvanáct).*
"It's leaving from platform number 12 (twelve).

In day-to day spoken informal Czech you will often hear:

- **Jede to z dvanáctky** "It's leaving from twelve," *z pětky* "from five," *z jedničky* "from one."

Numbers in its nominative form are **feminine gender** ending with *,-a*.

(*jednička* "one," *dvojka* "two," *trojka* "three," *desítka* "ten," *stovka* "hundred, etc).

Therefore, when declined, they will follow the model noun **žena** and in the genitive case they are used with any of the prepositions stated above. Example sentences with some prepositions:

<i>z jedničky</i>	"from one"	<i>vedle jedničky</i>	"next to one"
<i>z dvojky</i>	"from two"	<i>vedle dvojky</i>	"next to two"
<i>z patnáctky</i>	"from fifteen"	<i>vedle patnáctky</i>	"next to fifteen"
<i>z dvacítky</i>	"from twenty"	<i>vedle dvacítky</i>	"next to twenty"
<i>ze stovky</i>	"from hundred"	<i>vedle stovky</i>	"next to hundred"

Examples from the Dialogue

Vážení cestující, mezinárodní vlak Pendolino s pravidelným odjezdem do Vídně v 10.

"Dear passengers, international train Pendolino scheduled to depart at 10."

Jéžíš, musíme běžet na dvanáctku.

"Oh man, we need to run to number twelve. "

Sample Sentences

Pojedem ve dvanáct hodin z autobusové zastávky tři.

"We will go at noon from a bus stop number three."

Vlak do Brna jede z jedničky.

"A train to Brno goes from number one."

CULTURAL INSIGHT

Train Services

Trains have been operated in the Czech Republic for more than 175 years. For a long time, the biggest train operator has been Czech Rails (České dráhy), which is a state owned company. Since 2003, Czech rails became a joint stock company, which created three organisations within the company: the Company Ltd. providing passenger transport and cargo service, the Railway Infrastructure Organisation managing state assets, and the Railway Inspectorate.

Most important international railway station and a main train hub, located in Prague, is called *Hlavní nádraží* ("Main Railway Station"). International service from this station provides trains running across Europe, EuroCity or Euronight going mainly to Germany (Munich, Bavaria, Dresden, Hamburg). Other services going to Netherlands, Switzerland, Austria, Hungary, Croatia, and Serbia are LeoExpress or Railjet. There are also many regional trains running from the Main Station and connecting large cities such as, Brno, Plzeň, České Budějovice. EscoPrague and the local train CityElephant, are suburban services reaching the suburbs of Prague and surrounding cities to enable people to commute to work. SuperCity train Pendolino connects Ostrava city with Prague and also provides service to Slovakia and Austria.

Useful expression:

Cílová stanice.

"Final destination. "

LESSON NOTES

Beginner S1 #23

Opening a Czech Bank Account

CONTENTS

- 2 Czech
- 2 English
- 3 Vocabulary
- 3 Sample Sentences
- 4 Vocabulary Phrase Usage
- 5 Grammar
- 13 Cultural Insight

23

CZECH

1. Helena: Dobrý den, potřebovala bych si založit běžný bankovní účet.
2. Zaměstnanec: Jistě. Podmínkou je věk 18 (osmnáct) let a potřebujete dva doklady totožnosti s fotografií.
3. Helena: Můžu se identifikovat i řidičským průkazem?
4. Zaměstnanec: Ano, můžete.
5. Helena: Nejsem Češka. Jak je to s trvalým bydlištěm v Čechách?
6. Zaměstnanec: Stačí dokument s povolením k pobytu v Čechách.
7. Helena: Jako studentka mám potvrzení o studiu.
8. Zaměstnanec: A máte ho s sebou?
9. Helena: Ano, tady je.
10. Zaměstnanec: Výborně. Můžete si s námi založit studentský účet.
11. Helena: To bych moc ráda. Děkuji.

ENGLISH

1. Helena: Hello, I need to open a current bank account.
2. Employee (M): Sure. Conditions are that you need to be age 18 and you need two types of identification with a photo.
3. Helena: Can I identify myself by driver's licence too?

CONT'D OVER

4. Employee (M): Yes, you can.
5. Helena: I'm not Czech. What about my permanent address in the Czech Republic?
6. Employee (M): A residence permit is alright too.
7. Helena: As a student, I have a student certificate.
8. Employee (M): And do you have it with you?
9. Helena: Yes, here it is.
10. Employee (M): Very good. You can open a student account with us.
11. Helena: I'd love to, thank you.

VOCABULARY

Czech	English	Class
potřebovat	need, require	imperfective verb
založit	open, set-up, start	perfective verb
běžný	current, regular, ordinary	adjective
účet	account	noun
doklad	document	noun
totožnost	identity	noun
trvalý	permanent	adjective
povolení	permission, permit	noun
potvrzení	confirmation	noun
studentský	student's	adjective

SAMPLE SENTENCES

<p>Potřebuji si na chvíli odskočit.</p> <p>"I need to pop out for a moment."</p>	<p>Na tohle se může sahat.</p> <p>"It is allowed to touch this."</p>
<p>Založit novou školu.</p> <p>"To establish a new school."</p>	<p>Pošlu to běžnou poštou.</p> <p>"I'll send it by regular mail."</p>
<p>Přijde ti to na účet.</p> <p>"It will come to your account."</p>	<p>Máš u sebe doklady?</p> <p>"Have you got any identification on you?"</p>
<p>Už zjistili totožnost pachatele.</p> <p>"They already found out the identity of the offender."</p>	<p>Tady to musíš podepsat.</p> <p>"You have to sign it here."</p>
<p>Dostali jsme stavební povolení.</p> <p>"We were given a building permit."</p>	<p>Potřebuji potvrzení o studiu.</p> <p>"I need a student certificate."</p>
<p>Mám u sebe studentský průkaz.</p> <p>"I have a student card on me."</p>	

VOCABULARY PHRASE USAGE

Potřebovala bych...

"I'd need to"

Potřebovat = "to need," *potřebovala* = the feminine past tense of "needed," **bych** = the conditional form of the verb *být* ("to be"), meaning "I would."

Potřeboval/a bych literally means "I'd need...." It is a softer version of directly saying **potřebuju** ("I need"). It's used, for example, when explaining what you need and then asking for help/assistance etc, or the phrase itself can be perceived as asking for help. For example: **Potřebovala bych to tu podržet** = "I'd need this to be hold here/ I'd need somebody to hold it here."

Or the phrase can be just a statement of what you need to do: *Potřebovala bych se stavit na poště* = "I'd need to pop into the post office." Often, in English, this phrase is translated merely as "I need" without the conditional form.

For example:

Potřebovali bysme větší byt.
"We'd need a bigger flat."

založit si - **"to open, to start"**

založit = a perfective verb meaning "to establish, to open, to set up, to found."

Si = the reflexive pronoun "for oneself."

The verb **založit** or **založit si** has several uses: When talking about establishing or opening something, such as a new company, new school, opening a bank account, etc. **Založit** refers to something being established or opened, whilst **založit si** refers to oneself: **Založit si nový účet** = "to open a bank account for oneself." **Založit** can also refer to putting something away into a file, or putting a file away on a shelf, etc: *Založit dokumenty do kartotéky* = "to file documents into a cabinet." "To fold one's hands" is also **založit** in the Czech language, for example: **Založil ruce a čekal** = "he folded his hands and waited."

For example:

Můžeš si založit vlastní firmu.
"You can open your own company."

GRAMMAR

The Focus Of This Lesson Is Using the Instrumental Case When Talking About Opening a Bank Account

Jistě. Podmínkou je věk 18 let a potřebujete dva doklady totožnosti s fotografií.

"Sure. Conditions are age 18 and you need two types of identification with a photo."

The main use of the *instrumental case* is to express the means by which something is done (How an action is carried out), this also includes actions done *through* something.

- *Zaplatím bankovní kartou.*
"I will pay **by** bank card."

- *Přijdu s dokumenty.*
"I will come **with** the documents."
- *Půjdeme parkem.*
"We will go **through** the park."

In terms of English, the instrumental case corresponds to the English prepositions "with," "by" and "through." Example sentence from the dialogue:

- *Potřebujete dva doklady totožnosti s fotografií.*
"You need two types of identification **with a photograph.**"

Let's analyze the sentence with the instrumental case noun. *Fotografie*, "a photo," is a feminine noun ending with **,-ie**. Therefore, it will follow the feminine model noun **růže** when declined. Please notice the same endings of the model noun and the declined noun *fotografie*.

Declension cases	Model noun	Fem.noun ending with ,-ie, ,-ice, or ,-yně
1.nominative (naming, who/what)	růže	fotografie
2.genitive (possessive, whose)	<i>růže</i>	<i>fotografie</i>
3.dative (giving, to whom)	<i>růži</i>	<i>fotografii</i>
4.accusative (pointing, can see who/what)	<i>růži</i>	<i>fotografii</i>
5.vocative (calling by name)	růže!	fotografie!
6.locative (place, about who/what)	<i>růži</i>	<i>fotografii</i>
7.instrumental (by,with, through means, with who/what)	<i>růží</i>	<i>fotografií</i>

Instrumental Case Expresses:

Means of transport

- *Jet vlakem* "go by train," *jet lodí* "go by boat," *jet autem* "go by car," *letět letadlem* "fly by plane," *letět balónem* "fly by balloon"...etc.

Means of instruments

- *Platit kartou* "pay by card," *jíst lžící* "eat with a spoon," *zavázat stuhou* "tie up with a ribbon," *mít vodou* "wash with water," etc.

Time

- *Počítám s **pozdním** příletem*
"I expect a late arrival.." (lit. I take into account with later arrival)
- ***Začátkem** týdne se domluvíme.*
"We'll make a plan early next week."

Reason

- *Rozplakala se **štěstím**.*
"She began crying with happiness."
- *Zatnul zuby **bolestí**.*
"He gritted his teeth with pain."

Body movement

- *Kývla **hlavou** na pozdrav.*
"She nodded her head in greeting."
- *Pozorovala ho zvědavýma **očima**.*
"She was observing him with curious eyes."

You can see the **means of instruments** in this lesson dialogue sentence:

- *Můžu se identifikovat řidičským **průkazem**?*
"Can I identify myself **with** a driving **licence**?"

Průkaz is a masculine inanimate noun ending in ambivalent consonant *z*, following

the model noun **hrad**.

Declension cases	Model noun	Masc.inanimate nouns ending in hard or ambivalent consonants <i>b, c, d, f, g, h, ch, j, k, l, m, n, p, r, s, t, v, z</i>
1.nominative (naming, who/what)	hrad	průkaz
2.genitive (possessive, whose)	<i>hradu</i>	<i>průkazu</i>
3.dative (giving, to whom)	<i>hradu</i>	<i>průkazu</i>
4.accusative (pointing, can see who/what)	<i>hrad</i>	<i>průkaz</i>
5.vocative (calling by name)	<i>hrade!</i>	<i>průkaze!</i>
6.locative (place, about who/what)	<i>hradu</i>	<i>průkazu</i>
7.instrumental (by, with, through means, with who/what)	hradem	průkazem

The instrumental case is also used following these prepositions:

After some verbs and adjectives with *s/ se*.

I.e.:

Počítat s

"to expect, to take into account."

- **S bankovním poplatkem jsem počítal.**
"I expected the bank fee."

Bankovní poplatek "bank fee"

- *S nízkým bankovním **poplatkem** 200 (dvě stě) korun.*
"With a low bank fee 200 (two hundred) crowns."

Instrumental case with other prepositions:

mezi "between"

- *Vybrat si **mezi** běžným a spořicíím bankovním **účtem**.*
"To choose between current and savings bank account."

nad "above"

- *Prosím podepište to **nad** touto **linkou**.*
"Please sign it above this line."

pod "under"

- *Neprodám dům **pod cenou**.*
"I won't sell the house below our price."

před "in front of"

- *Počkejte na mě **před bankou**.*
"Wait for me in front of the bank."

s/ se "with"

- *Sejdu se **s** finančním **specialistou**.*
"I will meet with a financial specialist."

za "behind"

- ***Za bankou** je vstup do metra.*
"There is a metro entrance behind the bank ."

An example sentence with preposition s "with" from the lesson dialogue:

- *Stačí dokument **s povolením** k pobytu v Čechách.*
"A **resident permit** for the Czech Republic is enough."

Povolení is a neuter gender noun ending with a long **-í**, which follows the model noun **stavení** when declined. Please notice that only the instrumental form is different from other cases.

Declension cases	Model noun	Neuter nouns ending in - í
1.nominative (naming, who/what)	<i>stavení</i>	<i>povolení</i>
2.genitive (possessive, whose)	<i>stavení</i>	<i>povolení</i>
3.dative (giving, to whom)	<i>stavení</i>	<i>povolení</i>
4.accusative (pointing, can see who/ what)	<i>stavení</i>	<i>povolení</i>
5.vocative (calling by name)	<i>stavení!</i>	<i>povolení!</i>
6.locative (place, about who/what)	<i>stavení</i>	<i>povolení</i>
7.instrumental (by,with, through means, with who/what)	<i>stavením</i>	<i>povolením</i>

Pronouns in the instrumental case

In the lesson dialogue in this below sentence, the instrumental is used with a personal pronoun.

- *Můžete si **s námi** založit studentský účet.*
"You can open a student account **with us**."

Instrumental case using the preposition *s* + personal pronoun

	S + personal pronoun in instrumental case	Plural	S + personal pronoun in instrumental case
Singular			

já "I"	<i>se mnou</i> "with me"	my "we"	<i>s námi</i> "with us"
ty "you"	<i>s tebou</i> "with you"	vy "you"	<i>s vámi</i> "with you"
	<i>s ním</i> "with him"		
on "he"	<i>s ní</i> "with her"		
ona "she"		oni "they"	<i>s nimi</i> "with them"
ono/ to "it"	<i>s ním</i> (animate) "with it"		
	<i>s tím</i> (inanimate)		

Possessive pronouns in the instrumental

Můj otec "my father"

Moje matka "my mother"

	masculine possessive	masculine & neutral in instrumental	feminine possessive	feminine in instrumental
my	<i>můj otec</i>	<i>mým otcem</i>	<i>moje matka</i>	<i>mojí/ mou matkou</i>
your	<i>tvůj otec</i>	<i>tvým otcem</i>	<i>tvoje matka</i>	<i>tvojí/ tvou matkou</i>
his	<i>jeho otec</i>	<i>jeho otcem</i>	<i>jeho matka</i>	<i>jeho matkou</i>
her	<i>její otec</i>	<i>její otcem</i>	<i>její matka</i>	<i>její matkou</i>
our	<i>náš otec</i>	<i>naším otcem</i>	<i>naše matka</i>	<i>naší matkou</i>
your	<i>váš otec</i>	<i>vaším otcem</i>	<i>vaše matka</i>	<i>vaší matkou</i>
their	<i>jejich otec</i>	<i>jejich otcem</i>	<i>jejich matka</i>	<i>jejich matkou</i>

Example sentences instrumental + personal/ possessive pronoun

1. *Půjdu **s tebou** do banky.*
"I'll go to the bank with you."
2. ***Se školou** pojedem na výlet.*
"We'll go on a trip with school."
3. *Nehraj si **s tím!***
"Stop playing with it!"
4. *Pojed' **s námi** autem.*
"Come with us by car."
5. ***Se mnou** se neztratíš.*
"You won't get lost with me."
6. *Počkám před **vaším domem**.*
"I'll wait in front of your house."
7. ***S jejím otcem** si rozumím.*
"I get on well with her father."
8. *Přijdu ti naproti **s tvoují mamkou**.*
"I'll come to meet you with your mum."

Please note that the English expression "with you" referring to the person we speak with is translated in Czech language as *s sebou* ("with yourself") or *u sebe* ("on you"). For example:

1. *A máte ho **s sebou?***
"And do you have it **with you?**!"
2. *A máte to potvrzení **s sebou?***
"And do you have the confirmation **with you?**"

*Also possible to use:

1. *A máte to potvrzení **u sebe?***
"And do you have the confirmation **on you?**"

(Genitive case because of preposition *u*.)

Examples from the dialogue:

Můžu se identifikovat i řidičským průkazem?
"Can I identify myself by driving licence too?"

A máte ho s sebou?
"And do you have it with you?"

Sample Sentences

Helena platí bankovní kartou.
"Helen pays with a bank card."

Matěj jde s doklady na úřad.
"Matthew goes with documents to an office."

Majitelé zajistí svůj účet heslem.
"The owners secure their account by a password."

CULTURAL INSIGHT

Banks

All together, there are about 44 banks and foreign branches operating in the Czech Republic. Of them, there are some that do not provide a whole spectrum of services, but instead focus only on certain types of services, such as loans, mortgages, savings (building society account), etc.

Czech National Bank is the central bank of the Czech Republic and a politically independent institution at the same time. It supervises the Czech financial market, maintains price stability and supports the financial system and development.

Privatization of banks in the Czech Republic started in the 1990s after the Velvet Revolution (1989). The majority of state banks became either partially or wholly owned by foreign financial groups. A Czech bank is considered a bank with more than 50% ownership by a Czech entity. For example, Fio bank, Czech Export Bank, Czech-Moravian Guarantee and Development Bank. Other banks, even if they have 'Czech' in name, and have lower than 50% Czech ownership, are technically not considered Czech.

In recent years, clients started shifting from larger banks to smaller ones. The main reasons were that bank fees are minimized at smaller banks, current accounts and saving accounts are free of charge, and full internet service provided. Such popular banks are Sberbank, Fio Banka, Air Bank, Raiffeisen Bank, and GE Money Bank. Other reasons for large popularity could be accessibility in smaller cities with branch offices. For example, Postal Saving Bank (Poštovní spořitelna) which is connected with Post Office. Although this is a large bank, it's been strong and

stable, plus its branches are located even in mid-sized towns.

Useful expression

Běžný bankovní účet.

"Current bank account."

LESSON NOTES

Beginner S1 #24

Booking a Dental Appointment in the Czech Republic

CONTENTS

2	Czech
2	English
3	Vocabulary
4	Sample Sentences
4	Vocabulary Phrase Usage
6	Grammar
14	Cultural Insight

24

CZECH

1. Helena: Dobrý den. Chtěla bych se objednat na prohlídku zubů.
2. Zaměstnanec: Ano, jistě. Hodí se vám příští týden?
3. Helena: Nešlo by to tenhle týden?
4. Zaměstnanec: Máme volné místo zítra nebo v pátek ráno. Můžete přijít?
5. Helena: Počkejte chvíli, podívám se do diáře.
6. Helena: Ah, promiňte, zítra nemůžu přijít. V pátek můžu odpoledne.
7. Zaměstnanec: A hodilo by se vám to třeba v sobotu ráno?
8. Helena: Soboty máte otevřeno?
9. Zaměstnanec: Ano, ale jenom dopoledne do 12 (dvanácti) hodin.
10. Helena: Tak to se mi hodí. Ano prosím.
11. Zaměstnanec: Dobře, budu vás tedy čekat v 10 (deset) hodin.

ENGLISH

1. Helena: Hello. I'd like to make an appointment for my teeth check up.
2. Employee (M): Yes, certainly. Is next week suitable for you?
3. Helena: Couldn't you do it this week?

CONT'D OVER

4. Employee (M): We have an opening tomorrow or Friday. Can you come?
5. Helena: Just a moment, I'll check my schedule.
6. Helena: Oh, I'm sorry, tomorrow I cannot and Friday only in the afternoon.
7. Employee (M): And would it suit you perhaps on Saturday in the morning?
8. Helena: You are open on Saturdays?
9. Employee (M): Yes, but only in the morning until noon.
10. Helena: That suits me. Yes please.
11. Employee (M): Alright then, I'll be expecting you at 10 o'clock.

VOCABULARY

Czech	English	Class
objednat se	to make an appointment	perfective verb
příští	next	adjective
zítra	tomorrow	adverb
ráno	morning	noun
počkat	to wait	verb, perfective verb
chvilinka	a moment, instant, second	noun (diminutive)
podívat se	to have a look	perfective verb
třeba	for example, such as	adverb
dopoledne	before noon	noun

hodit se

to match, to suit
(somebody), to be useful

perfective and
imperfective verb

SAMPLE SENTENCES

<p>Musím se objednat k holiči.</p> <p>"I have to make an appointment at the barbers."</p>	<p>Hodí se mi to příští týden.</p> <p>"Next week is suitable for me."</p>
<p>Máš zítra něco v plánu?</p> <p>"Have you got any plans tomorrow?"</p>	<p>Ráno se pro tebe stavím.</p> <p>"I'll collect you in the morning."</p>
<p>Chodí každé ráno na procházku.</p> <p>"They go for a walk every morning."</p>	<p>Někdy se vyplatí počkat.</p> <p>"Sometimes it pays off to wait."</p>
<p>Můžete na tu fakturu ještě pár dní počkat. Už ji mám skoro hotovou.</p> <p>"Can you wait for your invoice a couple of days more? I almost have it ready."</p>	<p>Počkejte, prosím.</p> <p>"Wait, please."</p>
<p>Uplynula jen chvilinka.</p> <p>"Only a short moment has passed."</p>	<p>Podívám se dovnitř.</p> <p>"I'll have a look inside."</p>
<p>Třeba už mají otevřeno.</p> <p>"Maybe they are already open."</p>	<p>Dopoledne je tam méně lidí.</p> <p>"There are less people there before noon."</p>
<p>Kdy se vám to hodí?</p> <p>"When does it suit you?"</p>	

VOCABULARY PHRASE USAGE

Objednat se na...

"to make an appointment"

Objednat - means "to make an appointment/to order something".

Se - is the reflexive pronoun "oneself".

Na - is the preposition "on".

It can be used when making an appointment for a particular day or date. *Objednat se* - is a reflexive verb meaning "to make an appointment for oneself" and needs to be connected with preposition *na*. For example: *Objednat se na pondělí* = "to make an appointment on Monday," *objednat se na 20 (dvacátého)* = "to make an appointment for the 20th."

For example:

Objednat se na všeobecnou prohlídku.

"To make an appointment for a general check up. (doctor)"

Počkejte chvíliku...

"Just a moment"

Počkat = is a perfective verb meaning "to wait"

Počkejte = is the imperative form "wait!"

Chvilinka = is a feminine noun meaning "moment," or "short while."

Used in day to day speech but also as formal speech. It means "wait a moment (please)." The politeness is expressed through **vykání** (using the polite form of address) by using *-te* at the end of the verb. If the speech was informal, (talking to a friend or somebody younger), the phrase would be: **počkej chvíliku.**

For example:

Počkejte chvíliku, zapomněla jste tašku.

"Wait a moment, you forgot your bag."

To se mi hodí...

"That suits me..."

To = means "that"

Se = is the reflexive pronoun meaning "oneself"

Mi = is a personal pronoun in the dative form meaning "me"

Hodit se = is a reflexive verb meaning "to suit (somebody)" and the form **hodí** is the declined form third person singular "it suits."

Used in two different contexts:

1) When talking about suitability of time or appointment, or some situation. I.e.

Přijdeš zítra? To se mi hodí. = "Will you come tomorrow? That suits me."

2) When talking about the usefulness of something materialistic. I.e. *Našel jsem v kapse stovku, to se mi hodí.* = "I found a hundred bucks in my pocket, that comes in handy."

For example:

Jestli jdeš na poštu, to se mi hodí.

"If you are going to the post office, that's useful for me."

GRAMMAR

The Focus Of This Lesson Is Useful Expressions to Make an Appointment Over the Phone

Dobry den. Chtela bych se objednat na prohlidku zubu.

"Hello. I'd like to make an appointment for my teeth check up."

So what if you need to make an appointment with a doctor in the Czech Republic? You can choose between a personal visit to a chosen clinic, make a phone call, or fill in an online form. To make your phone call or personal visit easier, we will show you some useful phrases and words.

- ***Chtela bych se objednat na prohlidku zubu.***
"I'd like to make an appointment for my teeth check up."

When you want to go to a dentist, you need to make an appointment first. Make a greeting first, (you can say your name right away or later), and then you go straight to the point.

- *Dobry den, chtel/a bych se objednat k zubaři.*
"Hello, I'd like to make an appointment for the dentist. "
- *Dobry den, chtel/a bych se objednat na zubni prohlidku/ na kontrolu zubu.*
"Hello, I'd like to make an appointment for teeth check up."

Zubni prohlidka
"teeth check up"

Prohlídka/ kontrola
"check-up"

Zub/ zuby
"tooth/ teeth"

Objednat se na...
"to make an appointment for..."

If you go to the dentist for the first time, you may need to ask first if they take new patients.

- *Berete nové pacienty?*
"Do you take new patients?"

Brát
"to take"

Berete
"you take"

Nové
"new"

Pacient/Pacienti
"patient/patients"

The answer to this can be:

- *Ano, bereme.*
"Yes, we take."
- *Bohužel, máme plno.*
"Unfortunately, we are full."

The receptionist or the dentist assistant may ask you whether you have been to their clinic yet or not.

- *Už jste u nás byla?*
"Have you been to our place yet?" ("Have you been to our clinic before?")

Už
"already"

jste byl/a

"have you been"

u

"by/ with"

nás

"us"

The answer to this can be:

- *Ještě ne.*
"Not yet."
- *Ano.*
"Yes."
- *Ano, chodím k vám.*
"Yes, I go to your clinic."

Please note that *u nás* literally means "at our place," but is translated in English as "here," and *k vám* literally means "to yours", but is translated as "to your clinic."

When discussing the days of the week and time, you can ask:

- ***Můžu se objednat na...?***
"Can I make an appointment for..."

<i>dnes?</i> "today?"	<i>pondělí?</i> "Monday"
<i>zítra?</i> "tomorrow?"	<i>úterý?</i> "Tuesday"
<i>pozítrí?</i> "after tomorrow?"	<i>středu?</i> "Wednesday"
<i>tento týden?</i> "this week?"	<i>čtvrtek?</i> "Thursday"
<i>příští týden</i> "next week?"	<i>pátek?</i> "Friday"
<i>za tři týdny</i> "in three weeks?"	<i>sobotu?</i> "Saturday"
<i>příští měsíc</i> "next month?"	<i>neděli?</i> "Sunday"

If you are calling to a bigger clinic where there is more than one dentist, the receptionist may ask you which dentist you usually go to, or with whom you want to make an appointment. You need to give the dentist's name here.....

- *Ke komu chodíte?*
"Who do you go to?"
- *Ke komu se chcete objednat?*
"With whom do you want to make an appointment?"
- *K panu zubaři (jméno).*
"To Mr. (name)."
- *K paní zubařce (jméno).*
"To Mrs. (name)."
- *Zapomněl/a jsem jméno.*
"I forgot the name."

When you start talking about date and time:

- *Kdy máte čas?*
"When do you have time?"
- *Kdy se vám to hodí?*
"When does it suit you?"
- *Kdy můžete přijít?*
"When can you come?"
- *Můžete přijít...?*
"Can you come...?"
- *Máte čas....?*
"Do you have time...?"
- *Hodí se vám to?*
"Does it suit you...?"
- *Hodilo by se vám to?*
"Would it be suitable for you....?"

The answer to these could be:

- *Ano, to se mi hodí.*
"Yes, this suits me."

- *Ano, můžu přijít....*
"Yes, I can come."
- *Ano, mám čas*
"Yes, I have time."
- *To se mi nehodí.*
"That doesn't suit me."
- *Bohužel...nemám čas.*
"Unfortunately, I don't have time."
- *Bohužel nemůžu.*
"Unfortunately, I cannot (come)."

If you need to negotiate a different timing, you can ask:

Bylo by to možné...
"Would it be possible..."

jiný den?
"a different day?"

dříve?
"earlier?"

později?
"later?"

ráno?
"in the morning?"

odpoledne?
"in the afternoon?"

or:

Nešlo by to
"Couldn't you do it..."

dříve?
"earlier?"

později
"later?"

ráno?
"in the morning?"

odpoledne?
"in the afternoon?"

jiný den
"on a different day?"

When we do something regularly on a certain day each week, for example "on Saturdays," in Czech language we use the plural form of the day and without any preposition. For example: ***Soboty máme otevřeno?*** "**You are open on Saturdays?**" Let's go through the plural of all the days of the week.

Czech plural	English plural
<i>pondělky</i>	"on Mondays"
<i>úterky</i>	"on Tuesdays"
<i>středy</i>	"on Wednesdays"
<i>čtvrtky</i>	"on Thursdays"
<i>pátky</i>	"on Fridays"
<i>soboty</i>	"on Saturdays"
<i>neděle</i>	"on Sundays"

Example sentences:

- *Soboty a neděle máme zavřeno.*
"We are closed on Saturdays and Sundays "
- *Středy máme zavřeno.*
"We are closed on Wednesdays."
- *Pondělky mám volno.*
"I am free on Mondays."
- *Úterky máme jen do 3 (tří) hodin.*
"We are open only until 3 p.m. on Tuesdays."

Extra vocabulary:

1. *zubař*
"dentist"
2. *zubařka*
"dentist" (female)
3. *zub*
"tooth"
4. *bolest*
"ache, pain"
5. *bolet*
"to hurt, to ache"
6. *objednat se*
"to make an appointment"
7. *přijít*
"to come"
8. *osobně*
"in person"
9. *prohlídka*
"check up"
10. *ošetření*
"treatment"
11. *pojištění*
"insurance"
12. *kartička pojišťovny*
"insurance card"
13. *mám*
"I have"
14. *nemám*
"I don't have"
15. *doplatek*
"balance payment"

16. *zaplatit*
"to pay"
17. *účtovat*
"to charge"
18. *poprvé*
"for the first time"
19. *nejdřív*
"first"
20. *pravidelně*
"regularly"
21. *dopoledne*
"before noon"
22. *odpoledne*
"in the afternoon"
23. *v poledne*
"at noon"
24. *ráno*
"in the morning"
25. *večer*
"in the evening"

Language tip

When we speak over the phone in a formal way, you need to remember to use the formal Czech language, called *vykání* (using the polite form of address) which is done by adding **-te** at the end of the a verb. You don't need to know the person's name in order to use *vykání* because the politeness is already expressed through the verb in the **-te** form.

Mít **"to have"**

Máte ještě volno?
"Do you still have availability?"

Máte otevřeno soboty?
"Do you open (are you open) on Sat?"

Moct
"can, be able to"

Můžete mě objednat?
"Can you make me an appointment?"

Můžete mě vzít v pondělí?
"Can you take me on Monday?"

Brát
"to take/ accept"

Berete nové pacienty?
"Do you take new patients?"

Examples from the dialogue:

Máme volné místo zítra nebo v pátek ráno. Můžete přijít?
"We have availability tomorrow, Friday. Can you come?"

Tak to se mi hodí. Ano prosím.
"That suits me. Yes please. "

Sample Sentences

Můžu se u vás objednat?
"Can I make an appointment with you?"

Máte ještě volno?
"Do you still have availability?"

Který den bych mohl přijít?
"Which day could I come?"

CULTURAL INSIGHT

Czech Dentistry

Dentistry in the Czech Republic tends to be of high quality. There are many customers coming from abroad to have their teeth treated by Czech dentists. Having said that, there is a problem with the proper number of dentists located across the Czech regions. The number of dentists placed in larger cities is higher

than the number of dentists working in rural areas, which creates a difficult situation for clients from cities outside who need treatment. Most dentists tend to be located in more populated areas, particularly in Prague or other larger cities.

The style of appointments differs depending on the clinic, but most work based on making an appointment in advance. This can be done in person, by telephone, and nowadays online (for online appointments you need to wait for a confirmation email). There are exceptions, for example, when you have acute pain and need emergency treatment. In this case it is possible to come without an appointment, but it's still likely that you'll need to wait in the waiting room for some time before you can get the necessary treatment done. The advantage of making an appointment is that you don't need to wait your turn for a long time. But it requires some discipline too, in that you need to arrive to the clinic on time. It's best to arrive about ten minutes before the appointment. Keep in mind that it is necessary that you understand that it can be rather difficult to predict how long each treatment will take and so there can be delays.

The cost of treatment depends on the material used, location of clinic, time spent on the patient, and whether it is a standard or non standard type of treatment. Some treatments are covered fully by a medical insurance (national or private, depending which one your dentist has an agreement with), and some treatments are covered only partially and you need to pay what is not covered by insurance. Each dentist should have a list of prices per treatment. Some treatments are always covered by medical insurance and should not be charged (ie. extractions, x-rays, or standard check ups).

Useful expression

bolavý zub

"an aching tooth"

LESSON NOTES

Beginner S1 #25

Asking Your Czech Friend for a Favor

CONTENTS

- 2 Czech
- 2 English
- 3 Vocabulary
- 4 Sample Sentences
- 4 Vocabulary Phrase Usage
- 5 Grammar
- 13 Cultural Insight

25

CZECH

1. Jitka: Matěji, můžeš mi udělat laskavost?
2. Matěj: Jo, jasně.
3. Jitka: Potřebuju hodit dopis ředitelce.
4. Matěj: To bych mohl hodit. Stačí ti to kolem poledne?
5. Jitka: Jo, ale do schránky naproti poště. Tam se to vybírá častěji.
6. Matěj: Jo, dobře.
7. Matěj: A mohla bys mi na oplátku vyzvednout dort v cukrárně?
8. Jitka: To je mamince k narozeninám?
9. Matěj: Jo. Kdykoliv odpoledne. Já budu možná ještě v práci.
10. Jitka: Díky kolegovi končím v 5 (pět). Stavim se tam.
11. Matěj: Díky moc.
12. Jitka: Já taky dík.

ENGLISH

1. Jitka: Matěj, can you do me a favor?
2. Matěj: Yeah, sure.

CONT'D OVER

3. Jitka: I need to post a letter for the director.
4. Matěj: I could post it. Is around noon alright for you?
5. Jitka: Yeah, but into the letterbox opposite the post office. It gets collected more often.
6. Matěj: Alright.
7. Matěj: And could you, in return, collect a cake for me from the cake shop?
8. Jitka: Is that for your mom's birthday?
9. Matěj: Yeah. Anytime in the afternoon. I might still be at work.
10. Jitka: Thanks to my colleague I finish at 5. I'll pop in there.
11. Matěj: Thanks a lot.
12. Jitka: Me too.

VOCABULARY

Czech	English	Class
udělat	to do, to make	perfective verb
laskavost	kindness, favor	noun
potřebovat	need, require	imperfective verb
hodit	to post, to throw, to cast	perfective verb
do	in, to	preposition
naproti	opposite	adverb

oplatit	to pay back, to repay, in return (for something), to get revenge	perfective verb
vyzvednout	to collect, to pick up, to withdraw	perfective verb
možná	maybe, perhaps, possibly	particle
kdykoliv	anytime	adverb

SAMPLE SENTENCES

<p>Mohu vás o něco poprosit? "Can I ask you for something?"</p>	<p>Prokázal mi laskavost. "He did me a favor."</p>
<p>Potřebuji si na chvíli odskočit. "I need to pop out for a moment."</p>	<p>Na tohle se může sahat. "It is allowed to touch this."</p>
<p>To se bude jednou hodit. "This will come in handy one day."</p>	<p>Vložíme to do obálky. "We'll put it into an envelope."</p>
<p>Do Brna, prosím. "To Brno, please."</p>	<p>Těším se na víkend. "I look forward to the weekend."</p>
<p>Oplatil mi mou laskavostí. "He returned my favor."</p>	<p>Jedu vyvednout balík. "I'm going to collect a package."</p>
<p>Možná se tam potkáme. "Perhaps we'll meet there."</p>	<p>Přijď kdykoliv se ti to hodí. "Come whenever it suits you."</p>

VOCABULARY PHRASE USAGE

Udělat laskavost - "To do a favour"

Udělat - means "to do, to make"

Laskavost - is the feminine noun for "favour, kindness".

This is a specific phrase used only when talking about doing a favor for somebody, or somebody doing a favor for you. **Laskavost** - is always connected with these two verbs: **udělat** = "to do" (somebody a favor), or **prokázat** = "to do, to show" (somebody a favor, show kind behavior).

Mohl byste mi prokázat laskavost? = "Could you do me a favour?"

Mohl byste pro mě udělat laskavost? "Could you do a favour for me?"

For example:

Zkus mu prokázat laskavost.

"Try to do him a favour. "

Na oplátku - "in return"

Na - is a preposition "for, in"

Oplátka - is a feminine noun meaning "requit, paying back, returning (something)"

Na oplátku - is a phrase used in two contexts:

- 1) a positive meaning that usually applies to a favor or something good someone did for you
- 2) a negative meaning and is more about revenge.

1. *Na oplátku za vaší laskavost*
"In return for your kindness."
2. *Tohle je na oplátku za to co jsi mi udělal!*
"This is in revenge for what you did to me!"

For example:

Na oplátku se usmála.

"In return, she smiled."

GRAMMAR

The Focus Of This Lesson Is Using Verbs + the Dative Case in Order to Ask a Favor.

Matěji, můžeš mi udělat laskavost?
"Matthew, can you do me a favour?"

1) What is the dative (3rd) case used for:

The dative case is used with indirect objects in a sentence, most often referring to the English, "doing something to or for somebody." The question to ask is "**to who? for who? to what? for what?**"

In Czech language, the dative is often used without the prepositions "to, for," although translated with them into English.

Example of dative from the dialogue:

- *Hodit dopis ředitelce.*
"To post a letter **to the director.**"

For clarity, in this sentence, *dopis* ("letter") is the direct object, whereas *ředitelce* ("to the director") is the indirect object.

- *To je mamince k narozeninám?*
"It's **for your mum's** birthday?"

In this sentence, *To* ("it," referring to the birthday cake) is the direct object of the sentence whilst *mamince* ("for mum") is the indirect object.

2) Verbs and dative case

In terms of verbs, dative case is mostly used with such verbs that are about talking, giving, helping, sending, phoning etc. In other words, verbs that are needed for interaction and communication between humans and living things. Example verbs:

1. **dát/ dávat**
"to give"
2. **udělat/ dělat**
"to do"
3. **prodat/ prodávat**
"to sell"

4. **říct/ říkat**
"to say, to tell"
5. **odpovědět/ odpovídat**
"to reply"
6. **pomoct/ pomáhat**
"to help"
7. **koupit/ kupovat**
"to buy"
8. **poslat/ posílat**
"to send"
9. **zatelefonovat/ telefonovat**
"to phone"
10. **zavolat/ volat**
"to call"
11. **uvěřit/ věřit**
"to believe"
12. **vysvětlit/ vysvětlovat**
"to explain"

3) Dative and personal pronouns

In the dialogue, you can see how we use dative case with personal pronouns.

- *Stačí **ti** to kolem poledne?*
"Is alright **for you** at around noon?"
(the question to ask: For who is it alright? For you.)
- *A mohla bys **mi** na oplátku vyzvednout dort v cukrárně?*
"And could you, in return, collect a cake **for me** in the cake shop?"
(Question to ask: For who collect the cake? For me.)

Personal pronouns	Dative case, short form (Q:to who?)	Dative case, long form (Q:to who?)	Dative case with preposition
já "I"	<i>mi</i>	<i>mně</i>	<i>ke mně</i>
ty "you"	<i>ti</i>	<i>tobě</i>	<i>k tobě</i>
on "he"	<i>mu</i>	<i>jemu</i>	<i>k němu</i>
ona "she"	<i>jí</i>	<i>jí</i>	<i>k ní</i>
ono "it"	<i>mu</i>	<i>jemu</i>	<i>k němu</i>
my "we"	<i>nám</i>	<i>nám</i>	<i>k nám</i>
vy "you"	<i>vám</i>	<i>vám</i>	<i>k vám</i>
oni "they"	<i>jim</i>	<i>jim</i>	<i>k nim</i>

How to recognize when to use the short form and when the long form?

1) Usually the long form is used when putting emphasis on the personal pronoun.

A: *Dej mi to!*
"Give me it!" (literally)

B: *Ne, dej to **mně!***
"No, give it **to me!**"

- *Dáš to **mě.***
"You'll give it **to me.**"
- *Dám to **tobě.***
"I will give it **to you.**"
- *Dám to **jí.***
"I'll give it **to her.**"
- *Dám to **jemu.***
"I'll give it **to him.**"

- *Dám to **nám**.*
"I'll give it **to us**."
- *Dám to **vám**.*
"I'll give it **to you**."
- *Dám to **jím**.*
"I'll give it **to them**."

Please note when talking about **oneself**, we use pronoun **sobě** "to oneself."

- *Dám to **sobě**.*
"I'll give it to myself."
(Don't say: *Dám to mě*. "I'll give it to me.")
- *Dej to **sobě**.*
"Give it to yourself."
(singular)
- *Dejte to **sobě**.*
"Give it to yourself."
(plural)

2) The short form is used without emphasis in usual sentences:

- *Dej **mi** kousek.*
"Give **me** a bit."
- *Dám **ti** kousek.*
"I'll give **you** a bit."
- *Dám **mu** kousek.*
"I'll give **him** a bit."
- *Dám **jí** kousek.*
"I'll give **her** a bit."
- *Dám **mu** kousek.*
"I'll give **him** a bit."
- *Dám **vám** kousek.*
"I'll give **you** a bit." (plural and formal speech)

- *Dám jim kousek.*
"I'll give **them** a bit."

3) The dative used with a preposition and personal pronoun

- (I) *Přijď ke mně.*
"Come to **me**."
- (you) *Přijdu k tobě.*
"I'll come to **you**."
- (he) *Přijdem k němu.*
"We'll come to **him**."
- (she) *Přijdu k ní.*
" I'll come to **her**."
- (it) *Přijdu k němu.*
"I'll come to **him**."
- (we) *Přijďtě k nám.*
"Come to **us**."
- (you) *Přijdu k vám.*
"I'll come to **you**." (plural and formal speech)
- (they) *Přijdu k nim.*
"I'll come to **them**."

The dative is used in all sorts of sentences, not only when one needs to ask a favor and there are more prepositions which take the dative case. Examples follow.

Prepositions used with the dative:

- *až/ ke*
"as far as"
- *díky*
"thanks to"
- *k/ ke*
"toward/ to"

- *kvůli*
"because of, for the sake of"
- *naproti*
"opposite"
- *navzdory*
"despite"
- *proti*
"against, opposite"
- *směrem k*
"in the direction of, toward"
- *vůči*
"towards, with respect to"
- *vzhledem k*
"regarding, considering (what)"

Example sentences:

- *Můžeš dojít **až k** nám?*
"Can you come **as far as** to our place?"
- ***Díky** kolegovi končím v 5 (pět).*
"**Thanks to** my colleague I finish at five."
- *Byl **k** nim slušný.*
"He was polite **toward** them."
- *Šel bys tam **kvůli** mě?*
"Would you go there **because of** me?"
- *Hod' to do schránky **naproti** poště.*
"Put it in the letter box **opposite** the post office."
- *Zvládli jsme to **navzdory** dešti.*
"We managed it **despite** the rain."
- *Podrž to **proti** světlu.*
"Hold it **against** the light."

- *Musíš jít **směrem k** městu.*
"You need to go **in the direction** of the town."
- *Nebud' **vůči** ní tak kritický.*
"Don't be so critical **towards** her."
- ***Vzhledem k** jeho věku bych se bál.*
"**Considering** his age, I'd be afraid"

Declension of nouns in the dative:

gender noun		dative form (to whom? to what?) or other preposition s used with the dative	dative form (to whom? to what?) or other preposition s used with the dative
masculine	nouns ending in <i>b, f, l, m, p, s, v, z, h, ch, k, r, d, t, n.</i>	<i>doktoru/ ovi</i>	nouns ending in <i>a, e, ž, š, č, ř, c, j</i> and other less common endings
animate	<i>doktor</i>	<i>dopisu</i>	<i>muži</i> <i>soudci</i> <i>předsedovi</i>
inanimate	"doctor" <i>dopis</i> "letter"		<i>muž</i> "man" <i>soudce</i> "judge" <i>předseda</i> "chairman"

feminine	nouns ending with, -a	<i>sousedce</i> <i>holce</i>	nouns with less common endings, c, e, v, l, j, ž, st, d', ť...etc	<i>čepici</i> <i>láhvi</i> <i>radosti</i>
	<i>sousedka</i> "neighbour" <i>holka</i> "girl"		<i>čepice</i> "hat" <i>láhev</i> "bottle" <i>radost</i> "joy"	

neuter	nouns ending with , -o	<i>autu</i> <i>pivu</i>	nouns ending with less common endings, e, ě, í,	<i>bydlení</i> <i>nebi</i> <i>štěněti</i>
	<i>auto</i> "car" <i>pivo</i> "beer"		<i>bydlení</i> "living" <i>nebe</i> "sky" <i>štěně</i> "puppy"	

Examples from the Dialogue

Potřebuju hodit dopis ředitelce.
"I need to post a letter for the director. "

To je mamince k narozeninám?
"Is that for your mum's birthday?"

Sample Sentences

Poděkoval Jitce za laskavost.
"He thanked Jitka for her kindness."

Díky tobě jsme to zvládli.
"Thanks to you we managed it."

Můžeš zavolat Petrovi?
"Can you call Peter?"

CULTURAL INSIGHT

Letters and Correspondence

These days, correspondence of many kinds has been replaced mainly by emails. On a daily basis, Czech people write lots of work related or private emails and text messages. Although it seems that modern technology has rolled over the old fashioned paper written letters, it appears that Czech people don't want to give up sending postcards and greeting cards especially for special occasions like Christmas, Easter and birthdays. Although sending postcards is more expensive than sending a text message, Czechs find it much more personal to hand-write a post card. If they opt for a text message via their mobile phone, rather than just a text message they tend to send MMS, a photo or a picture.

It's still perceived that the right way to write a private letter is to hand-write it in order to make the content sound personal. It is thought that typed private letters are impersonal and distant, and could be typed by anybody. Unlike formal letters, private letters can have a relaxed style and do not require strict adherence to certain rules.

Useful expression

Osobní dopis

"Personal letter"



- Intro
- 1 Talking About Your Skills in Czech
- 2 Finding a Place to Call Home in the Czech Republic
- 3 Have You Been Left Outside in the Cold in the Czech Republic?
- 4 Getting Your Address Wrong in the Czech Republic
- 5 Planning Your Future in the Czech Republic
- 6 You Can Always Talk About the Weather in Czech!
- 7 What Will You Do During Your Winter Vacation in the Czech Republic?
- 8 These Czech Boots Were Made for Walking!
- 9 Making Dinner Reservations in Czech
- 10 Ordering a Delicious Czech Dish
- 11 Is Your Czech Meal Too Spicy?
- 12 A Day of Czech Traffic Chaos
- 13 How Do You Get to this Czech Airport?
- 14 Telling Your Hairdresser What You Want in Czech
- 15 Talking About Your Favorite Celebrity in Czech
- 16 How Was Your Czech Vacation?
- 17 Sending a Package in the Czech Republic
- 18 What's Your Big Czech Secret?
- 19 Planning a Wedding in the Czech Republic
- 20 Visiting a Czech Doctor
- 21 Ordering a Taxi in the Czech Republic
- 22 Is Your Czech Train Delayed?
- 23 Opening a Czech Bank Account
- 24 Booking a Dental Appointment in the Czech Republic
- 25 Asking Your Czech Friend for a Favor